

OUTLINE of the HISTORY of CHINA

See Prehistoric Synchrony Notes 67, 72, 77, 98, 127, 148 and 176.

A. MYTHICAL PERIOD

See Prehistoric Synchrony Note 189

1. Pan-ku: Shaper of heavens and Earth.
2. Three Rulers: Impersonations of the Celestial, Terrestrial and Human; "Heaven, Earth and Man are the three great forces of Nature".
3. Yu-chau (Nest Having): Under his reign man begins building houses.
4. Sui-jin: Teaches use of fire, which mainly includes cooking. Record keeping with the method of knotted cord introduced (ergo twine and rope have been invented).
5. Yung-ch'eng: (Service Accomplished)
6. Fuh-hi: Born at Ch'eng-ki. Ruled at K'ai-fung-fu. Institutes laws of marriage. Teaches net fishing and the rearing of domestic animals. Invents lute and lyre. Invents system of family names and divides people into clans with surnames - then they are registered for taxation. Invents system of writing that supercedes knotted cord: Six classes of characters - Objects, Borrowed Meanings, Objects, Combining Ideas, Inverted Significations and Unites sound to the object.
7. Shih-nung: Son of Nang-teng daughter of chief of Yukiau district and wife of ruler of Sian-tien. Makes farming a science. Matches soils to their product. Introduces plough, husbandry. Herbal medicine.
8. Seven Rulers: Unimportant.
9. Yu-wang: Corrupt: Rebellion dethrones him and changes dynasty: Man of power and position Ch'ih-yew begins rebellion. Hien-yuan raises army against him. Battle of Cho-luh; Ch'ih-yew defeated by Hien-yuan who is elected to the throne by the feudal chiefs; he takes the name

B. LEGENDARY PERIOD

1. Hwang-Ti (The Yellow Emperor): Mother is Fu-pau; born near River Ki. Inventor of wheeled vehicles. Minister Yung-ch'eng composes a calendar and makes astronomical instruments. Minister Ling-lun makes Ta-hia, bamboo instruments. Yung-yuan manufactures 12 bells to denote different seasons of the year. New methods of reckoning devised, weights and measures regulated. Experienced in dyeing. Bow and arrow appears. In 61st year of reign invents Sexagenary Cycle. Queen Lui-tsu, daughter of chief of Si-ling, develops silk industry. Manufacture of wood, pottery and metal utensils. Minister Kung-ku constructs boats and carts. Officers assigned to settle land boundary disputes and to prevent encroachment upon poor landowners by the powerful. Establishes places of worship.

2. Kin-t'ien, son (Shau Hau): Moves capital to Ch'u-feu. Distinguishes various orders of Civil and Military mandarins by color of dress.

3. Chwan Hu (Kau-yang): Grandson of Hwang-Ti but not son of Kin-t'ien. Moves capital to Puh. Corrects calendar. Has bells cast. Has mineral resources of country examined. Seeks the perfection of religious music. Appoints four sons of Kin-t'ien and son of Shen-nung and his grandson to preside over the Five Elements (Water, Fire, Wood, Metal and Earth).

See Prehistoric Synchrony Note 211

4. Kau-sin (Ti Kuh): Grandson of Yuan-hiau, a son of Hwang-Ti. Establishes capital in Honan-fu. Just and interested in concerns of his people. K'i, son by the queen - minister of agriculture under Shun - ancestor of Chow dynasty. Sieh, son by a concubine - minister of instruction under Shun - ancestor of Shang dynasty: His duty to assume carrying out of five orders of relationship; parent and child, sovereign and subjects, husband and wife, brother and brother and friend and friend. Yau, son by a concubine, rules principality of T'au during reign of Ti Chih, capital at T'ang.

5. Ti Chih: Son by a concubine. Given nine years trial as emperor then set aside for Yau.

6. T'ang Ti Yau: Son of Kau-sin, ascends throne at 16. Combination of ruler and sage: Regulates and refines his people. Unites the feudal tribes beyond the royal domain (see Korea). Traveled his domain. Very popular. Government wise and benevolent (helped by period of ideal weather). Corrects calendar for guidance of farmers in cultivating the land (commands Hi and Ho, royal astronomers, to calculate and make map of Sun, Moon, stars and zodiac spaces). 61st year; great flood of Yellow River: Assigns minister Kwun (Baron of Ts'ung and father of Yu) to devise relief for devastation. 70th year; Kwun is degraded for his failure (imprisoned later). Also, nobles of empire recommend Shun to succeed him. China divided into 12 grand divisions. 75th year; Shun recommends Yu, son of Baron Kwun, as able to solve problem of over-flowing river. Yu is appointed to the task: See under Yu below (Hsia dynasty).

7. Yu Ti Shun: For 28 years ruled as colleague with Yau. At death of Yau, refused to assume throne until three year mourning was over (also, to give Yau's disinherited son Chu the opportunity to rule). Engaged in astronomical

studies. Regulates religious observation. As reminders to errants, he has pictorial representations made of the punishments for crimes, but to be merciful, he utilized banishment. Territory: W to E part of Shensi, N about 1/2 of Shensi, E, W 1/2 of Shantung and S only N part of Honan. 14th year; orders Baron Yu to consult with him about affairs of state. 33rd year; appoints Baron Yu as colleague, debarring his son Shang-chun.

C. The HSIA DYNASTY

NOTE: Bamboo Records were tablets that were said to have been discovered in the tomb of King Siang of Wei, which was plundered in 279CE. They contained about one hundred thousand characters, and were deposited in the imperial library by Wu Ti, founder of the Western Tsin dynasty (L). These bamboo tablets contained nearly 20 different works of between 70 and 80 chapters or books.

1. Yu: Son of Baron Kwun [as minister under Yau: tracked rivers to their sources, burned wood on mountain sides, built up embankments, made cuts through hills, deepened channels; all until waters drain off into the sea. He more accurately defines boundaries of the provinces, their production and amount of revenue to pay to the government. 16th year of Shun; leads an unsuccessful expedition against the aborigines who refuse to submit to the government] Death of Shun - Yu retires to allow Shun's son I-kiun to assume throne but the latter, the nobles and people desire Yu: He moves capital to Ping-Yang. His is an open administration (drum at the door, etc). 1st year (?) I-ti discovers spirits by distilling grain - Yu expels I-ti from country as dangerous (i.e.; the danger alcohol represents). 2nd year; death of chief minister Han-yan. Yih is appointed in his place. 8th year; on tour of provinces reaches Hwuy-k'i to meet his nobles One, Fang-fung, is put to death for being late. During his reign, gold and silver begin being minted as currency, replacing the barter system.

2. Ch'i (or K'i): Son of Yu. (Yih "resigns" during 3 yr mourning period). Moves capital to Honan. Battle of Kan (in Shensi); K'i defeats Hu, a powerful noble who desires to reign.

3. T'ai K'ang: Eldest son of K'i. Indolent and vicious, he alienates the people. 19th year; goes on hunting expedition across Loh river. After 100 days of no news, I, the prince of K'ung, seizes the throne and places army to prevent return of T'ai K'ang.

4. Chung K'ang: Brother, appointed by I at death of T'ai K'ang to be his puppet. But Chung appoints the Marquis Yin as PRIME MINISTER, aceing out I. In the 5th year, an eclipse of the sun occurs, unannounced by the Ministers of the Board of Astronomy, rulers of Hi and Ho. Because of their laxity, Yin is sent out against them, is successful; Hi and Ho become part of the royal holdings.

5. Hsiang (or Siang): Son. With Yin dead, I again tries to regain power. He forces Siang to flee to Chin-kwan and assumes rule. Dismissing all of the able and loyal ministers (employing in their stead corrupt men one of whom is Tsuh, chief of Han) and neglecting the interests of the people, he spends his time hunting. 8th year; I on hunting trip; Tsuh leads a coup and has I killed. Tsuh marries I's widow and fathers two sons, Kian and Hi (actually sons of I??) When Kian reaches age of 20, Tsuh orders him to kill Siang.

6. Interregnum: Death of Siang. His widow Min flees to her father, chief at Jing, in Shun-Tung. Soon she gives birth to a son: Shau K'ang. Tsuh's rule is one of dissipation - much disliked by the people. Later, seeking Shau K'ung to kill him, Shau K'ung flees to the chief of Yu becoming chief cook. Later he receives the chief's two daughters and city of Lun to rule over.

7. Shau K'ung (or Shau K'ang): Begins to "re-civilize" the empire, influencing some of the border tribes. 11th year, Yellow River overflows: The Prince of Shang is ordered to control it. 13th year, Wu Yu, a son, establishes himself in Yueh, founding a feudal state of his own.

8. Ch'u: Son. Capital at Yuen.

9. Huai (or Hwai): Son.

10. Mang: Son.

11. Hsieh (or Sieh): Son. During reign, prince of Yin murdered by prince of Yu-yih who is killed by forces of Yin and Ho.

12. Pu Chiang (or Pu Kiang): Son of ?

13. Chiung (or Kiung): Brother.

14. Chin (or Kin): Son. Adopts national music to the requirements of the people of the west. Moves capital from Honan to Shensi.

15. K'ung Chia (or K'ung Kia): Son of Pu Chiang. 27th year; Prince of Shang has son called Li.

16. Kao (or Kau): Son of ?

17. Fa: Son. Various tribes of aborigines submit to him

18. Chieh (or Kieh): Son. Strong and dissolute ruler. 33rd year; undertakes an attack on chief of Shih. The latter offers his daughter Mei-hi as a wife, avoiding the attack. She is beautiful but dissolute, quickly enslaves Chieh to her and turns the capital into a hedonistic, orgiastic playground - viewed as immoral by the nation. 37th year, T'ang, prince of Shang sends I-yin to the emperor to change his ways; Chieh sends him away. 51st year; construction of an underground palace for further immoral conduct. High officials begin deserting to T'ang. Chung-ku, astronomer royal, implores T'ang to end the wickedness. Also, great earthquakes and the I and Lo rivers run dry. 52nd year; battle of Ming-t'iau, forces of T'ang defeat Chieh who flees to Nan-ch'au where he is imprisoned and dies three

years later.

D. The SHANG (or YIN) DYNASTY

1. T'ang: Ascends the throne at Po (modern Shang-k'iu). Names I-yin as prime minister. He metes out justice to the nobles and assigns lands to the descendants of the last dynasty. 2nd year; drought hits the country. 8th year; drought has wreaked havoc on country, but ends this year with copious rains. To prevent further occurrences like this, T'ang degrades Chu, grandson of Shen Nung who had acted as Hsia dynasty tutelary god of the land replacing him with K'i, son of Ti Kuh.

2. T'ai Chia (or T'ai Kia): Grandson. Weak and vacillating he pays no heed to I-yin who shuts him up in the palace at Shen-si. 4th year; repentant and escorted by I-yin, he returns to the capital where he rules with much virtue and concern for his people.

3. Wu Ting (or Yu Ting): Son. During reign, death of I-yin who is mourned throughout the country.

4. Ta Keng (or T'ai Kung): Brother.

5. Hsiao Chia (or Siao Kia): Son.

6. Yung Chi (or Yung Ki): Son of ? Weak - nobles refuse acknowledgement - royal authority only in royal lands.

7. T'ai Wu (or T'ai Mow): Brother. Prime minister I-chih, son of I-yin; helps to revive competent government.

Construction of famous carriages.

8. Chung Ting: Son. Moves capital from Po to Gan. Internal disorders and invasion from the south.

9. Wai Jen: Brother. Confusion - nobles refuse to acknowledge him.

10. Ho T'an Chia (or Ho Tan Kia): Brother. Moves capital from Gan to Siang.

11. Tsu I (or Tsu Yih): Son. Yellow River overflow forces him to move the capital from Siang to Kung. After nine years moves it to Hing-Tai. Prime minister Wu Hien manages to rebuild respect for the government.

12. Tsu Hsin (or Tsu Sin): Son.

13. Wu Chia (or Yu Kia): Brother. Confusion again.

14. Tsu Ting: Son. Unhappy reign.

15. Nan Keng (or Nan Kung): Son of Wu Chia.

16. Yang Chia (or Yang Kia): Son of ? Dynasty in dire straits.

17. P'an Keng (or P'an Kung): Brother. Moves capital from King-t'ai to Yin, north of Yellow River in Honan. This to move government to where great kings of former days ruled so as to revitalize his government (also, it is centrally located). Dynasty hereinafter called the Yin. Great improvements in everyday life throughout the empire.

18. Hsiao Hsin (or Siao Sin): Brother.

19. Hsiao I (or Siao Yih): Brother. 26th year Tan Fu (descendant of K'i) chief of Pin, moves his people to K'i and assumes the title of Chow.

20. Wu Ting: Son. Keeps silence for three-year mourning period Chooses Hu-yueh, a poor farmer of Fu-yen in Kiai-chow in Shansi as prime minister. The decline of the state is arrested: Six nations send ambassadors. (1292) Wars with the northern tribes begin, by 1289 they are conquered.

21. Tsu Keng (or Tsu Kung): Son.

22. Tsu Chia (or Tsu Kia): Brother. Wicked and licentious - fortunes of country again begin decline.

23. Lin Hsin (or Lin Sin): Son.

24. Keng Ting (or Kung Ting): Brother.

25. Wu I (or Wu Yih): Son. Moves capital to north of River Lo. Earns people's dislike by discrediting their religion. Killed by lightning.

26. T'ai Ting: Son. Ki, son of Tan Fu, Duke of Chow, distinguishes himself battling the northern tribes. [(1184) Death of Ki; succeeded by son Ch'ang]

27. Ti I (or Ti Yih): Son. His son by a concubine later founds a dynasty in Korea. The concubine becomes queen, has another son Chow Sin. For his valor and endearment by the people, Ti I appoints Ch'ang, Duke of Chow, "Chief of the West". (1167) Chang is ordered to contain the barbarians of the north. He does. Toward end of his reign, Ti I appoints son Ki, viscount of Wei, as successor, but ministers dissuade him due to lacking legality.

28. Chou Hsin (or Chow Sin): Son. Powerful, extravagant and a drunkard. First to use ivory chopsticks. (1146) Expedition against state of Su by which he obtains the beautiful T'a-ki whom Chow Sin loves. She is fully licentious and cruel. For her he builds the "Stag Tower"-takes seven years to build. Another palace built at Sha-k'iu where orgies are carried out. Popular resentment to taxes paying for this; T'a-ki suggests making penalties more severe against complainers. Ch'ang, Duke of Chow, complains at her cruelties: Hu, Earl of Ts'ung casts Ch'ang into prison at Yew-li for two years. (1134) Death of Ch'ang, succeeded by son Fa (as Duke of Chow - Wu Wang). (1123) Fa leads an army against Li, subdues the state and awaits Chow- Sin's reformation, none comes. (1122) Battle of Muh (north of Honan); defeat of Chow Sin who immolates himself in the Stag Tower. T'a-ki is executed. Fa frees many prisoners and raises monuments over grave of Pi-kan. Distributes treasure of the Stag Tower and the grain stores of the Chihli granary - distributed among the destitute. He appoints territories for the descendants of former great emperors to reside. Passes laws to assure peace and perpetuity to the nation.

E. The CHOW DYNASTY

1. Wu Wang: Descended from Tan-fu, originator of the House of Chow (1326). He disbands his army and disperses its oxen among the farmers. To reward those who aided him, he creates 18 large estates and 72 smaller ones - the Feudal System - founding five orders of nobility; Duke, Marquis, Earl, Viscount and Baron. The state of Lu is given to Tan, Duke of Chow. The states of Ts'i and Yen (capital; Yen-king) are created. With prime minister Lu-shang, he assures that he will rule judiciously and assure the overseerage of a reverent spirit. 1st year; consults viscount of Wei as to the best methods of governing his people: Reply is the "Great Plan", a mixture of common sense, abstruse doctrines and superstition embodied by a system of eight symbols that can be arranged in 64 hexagrams to be interpreted; in short, the basis for the I-Ching ("Book of Changes"). For this Wu gives the viscount of Wei the government of Korea. The country is divided fairly for the purpose of fair taxation. Old age homes and schools are established. Wu's fame spreads far and wide. 2nd year; the wild tribes of Len make peace.

2. Ch'eng Wang (or Ch'ung): Son. Being 13, his uncle, the Duke of Chow, acts as regent. [Tan's son, Peh-kin, establishes his capital at Kieh-fu and becomes Duke Lu.] (1114) Wu -kung, son of Chow Sin and made prince of Sung by Wu, plots with Kwan-shuh, Wu's brother (who wished to be emperor) to overthrow Chung. The battle begins; the Duke of Chow against Wu-kung, Kwan-shuh and two other of Wu's brothers. (1112) Duke of Chow defeats the rebels: Wu-kung and Kwan-shuh are executed, second brother imprisoned, third brother deprived of rank and let go. Shang peoples moved away. Viscount K'i, elder brother of Chow Sin made chief of the Shang clan. (1111) Ch'eng is 17, Duke of Chow ends his regency. (1109) Ambassadors from king Yueh Ch'ang of Cochin China arrives at court seeking aid. (1108) Chung orders new capital built at Loh in Honan and when completed, the Duke of Chow was to be its government. (1103) Ch'eng tours the empire. (1102) Orders a coinage of copper to be begun, each piece is to be round with a hole in the middle. To prevent another rebellion, before his death, he calls together his ministers and commends his son Ch'au to them.

3. K'ang Wang: Son. His chiefs are headed by Shih, Duke of Shan and the Duke of Peih. Shih is also Grand Guardian and K'ang's grand uncle and is capable in government: He rectifies the growing scandal of justice only for those that could afford it. He dies before does K'ang.

4. Chao Wang (or Chau): Son. China's prosperity begins a decline. (1038) Murder of Yiu, Duke of Lu, by his brother Wei. The crime is not rectified. Death of Chao by drowning in the River Han while on tour of Hunan and Hupeh.

5. Mu Wang (or Muh): Son. The chief of the state of Su leads a rebellion. Mu, with his charioteer Tsan-fu, opposes Su and defeats the rebellion. Tsan-fu is made chief of Su. (966) Expedition against the wild tribes of Turfan is a failure. (956) Issues a decree allowing the redemption of punishments by the payment of a money fine.

6. Kung Wang: Son.

7. I Wang: Son. 1st year moves capital to Hwai-li. During reign country frequently invaded by barbarian tribes.

8. Hsiao Wang (or Hiau): Brother. Hsiao employs Fei-tze (who traces his ancestry to Yih, an official of Shun) as superintendent of the royal studs. Later his is given the town of Ts'in from which his family begins growing in importance.

9. Yi Wang (or I): Nephew, son of I. Fearful of his nobles he allows the chief of Tsu to extend his territories. (891) Expedition against the Turfans is successful. People of Hunan and Hupeh begin encroaching on their neighbors. Yi refuses to aid those being encroached upon due to lack of strong enough force.

10. Li Wang: Son. Cruel and remorseless, the chief of Tsu submits to him. (867) Against popular and noble remonstrance, appoints the grasping and avaricious Ying-i president of the nobles. Against the rising tide of disagreement with the appointment, Li begins a reign of terror. (841) People rise in rebellion and Li flees to Chi in Shansi. The Dukes of Chow and Shau take over as regents.

11. Hsuan Wang (or Suan): Son. At first revives capable, fair government: The great majority of feudal chiefs return their allegiance to the emperor's family. Spends many years battling against barbarian incursions eventually becoming indifferent to the affairs of China. His queen throws herself in prison, returning his interest to affairs of state. (788) Battle of "the Thousand Acres"; he is defeated by the K'iang, west of Szchwan and Kansuh. He becomes morose and moody.

12. Yu Wang (or Yew): Son. (780) Rivers King, Wei and Lo run dry. (779) He meets the beautiful Pausze: He puts away his queen (daughter of chief of Shin) and disinherits his son I- K'iu in favor of Pau-sze's son. (775, 29 Aug) Eclipse of the Sun. States of Ching and Chang organized about this time. From about this time, the nobles begin refusing to obey Yu's orders, ignoring him, making war and entering treaties among themselves. (771) Yu demands his son I-K'iu from the chief of Shin who refuses (knowing death awaits I-K'iu). Yu marches against him; the chief of Shin calls in the Jung barbarians who ransack the capital, slay Yu and carry off Pausze. Now the nobles (aided by the states of Tsin, Ts'in, Wei and Ching) expel the Jungs and enthrone I- K'iu, known as P'ing.

13. P'ing Wang: Son. Moves capital from Shensi to Loh-yang in Honan to be further away from the barbarians but which placed control of the crown with the nobles. Also, P'ing raises the chief of Ts'in to noble rank and gives him territory including city of Honan, a commanding position that enables Ts'in's power to grow. (752) Ts'in breaks with the emperor for the state has become quite powerful. (748) Wars between several states begin; P'ing is powerless. (740) The state of Ch'u organized; cap at K'ing-chow. (730) ATT the Duke of Ching begins the practice of burying

live servants with dead nobles. (722)The Duke of Lu, Hwui, establishes his state's independence of the emperor. The Duke of Lu arrests P'ing who soon dies in poverty.

14. Huan Wang (or Hwan): Grandson. (719, 14 Feb) Eclipse of the Sun. (700) State of Tsu organized.

15. Chuang Wang (or Chwang): Son. (693) Duke of Chow tries to dethrone him in favor of his brother; he is unsuccessful and the duke is executed. Rest of reign deals in the wars between the states of Lu and Ts'i (under Duke Hwan with his prime minister Kwan-chung). (687) The state of Teng (T'eng, in Ssu valley) is absorbed by the state of Chhu (Ch'u, in the Yangtze River valley, Hupei, Anhui and Hunan).

16. Hsi Wang (or Hi): Son. He appoints Duke Hwan of Ts'i to be chief of the five states holding power in China. Tso- mui, a general of Lu, protests because of the Duke's encroachment on his land. The Duke returns the land and is recognized by the states. Duke Hwan then sets out to renege but is persuaded not to by Kwan-chung.

17. Hui Wang (or Hwei): Son. Accession contested by influential parties who wish his brother on the throne. The conflict rages for three years when the brother is forced to flee; the chief of Ting slays him. (668) Turmoil in the state of Lu over a disputed succession. (660) Western barbarians invade and take Hing; Hwan, Duke of Ts'i, drives them out. (658) State of Tsin (or Chin, of Shansi and Honan), having grown in power, attacks and absorbs Hing, Kang and Wei. (656[4]) Tsin starts for Kwo and Yu, but the two states combine to fight. The prime minister of Tsin bribes the chief of Yu to allow passage for his armies to Kwo. It is done, Kwo is conquered and on the return, Yu is also. (655) Eight large states combine into a confederation with Ts'i at its head to attack a dependency of Ch'u. The duke of the dependency complains to Duke Hwan of Ts'i who reminds him that his state hasn't paid the annual tribute to the emperor (a practice begun under Yu). The tribute is paid and peace is restored. (654) A concubine of Duke Hien of Tsin, Li-ki, tricks her husband into having her son be his successor: Hien dies and Li-ki's son assumes the post but is murdered by the minister Li-k'eh. Unstable government follows.

18. Hsiang Wang (or Siang): Son. (647) His brother tries to unseat him with help of barbarians. Hsiang calls Hwan, Duke of Ts'i for help; he sends Kwan-chung who defeats the rebels. (844) Death of Kwan-chung; Duke Hwan appoints three incompetents in his place. (642) Death of Duke Hwan: A fierce two-month contest among his five sons rages. (638) The duke of Sung proposes he be named president of the confederation. The duke of Ch'u resents this and Sung attacks Ting, a dependency of Ch'u. Sung is defeated. (635) Wen, rightful heir to dukedom of Tsin, returns and assumes his position. (634) Hsiang's brother sends a barbarian invasion against the emperor; they are defeated with aid from Wen of Tsin. For this Hsiang grants Wen four districts with their cities. (632) Five states unite to attack Sung, the state of Tsin again is successful in aid; Wen becomes president of the nobles. (627) Death of Wen; his son becomes duke of Tsin. The duke of Ts'in attacks Tsin but is defeated. (624) The duke of Ts'in again attacks Tsin, succeeds, and is made president of the nobles.

19. Ch'ing Wang (or K'ing): Son. To bury his father, he applies to the duke of Lu for burial expenses. (613) Chief of Tsu moves his capital.

20. K'uang Wang (or K'wang): Son. (612) Duke of Ts'i attacks Ts'au, a dependency of Lu. (609) Death of the duke of Lu; his son is murdered by a relative who seizes rule of the province. (605) Duke of Tsin begins a reign of increasing cruelty and oppression. His minister Chan-tun remonstrates but is forced to flee for his life. Chan-tun's brother kills the tyrant and recalls Chan-tun.

21. Ting Wang: Brother. (606) Duke of Ch'u (calling himself Prince) campaigns against the aborigines in western Honan. (596) Duke of Ch'u marches against Chang and defeats the rescuing forces of Tsin. (593)Duke of Lu doubles his people's taxes, creating much discontent. (588) Wei fights Ts'in; Wei is defeated: Lu, Tsin and Ts'au aid Wei and Ts'i sues for peace.

22. Chien Wang (or Kien): Son. Quarrels between Tsin and Ch'u: Ch'u defeated. Ruler of Tsin becomes arrogant and is killed by one of his officials.

23. Ling Wang: Son. (571) Tsin, Ts'i, Sung, Lu, Wei, Ts'au and Tsu combine to build a wall along the border of the state of Chang to stop its encroachments. Chang pays homage to Ch'u. (568) The duke of Tsin concludes a treaty of peace with the barbarian Jung tribes. (563) 12 states combine to punish Chang (for breaking its alliance with Tsin for Ch'u); Chang returns to its association with Tsin and reforms its economy. Three times does Ch'u attack and three times repulsed. (551; 21st day of 10th month) Birth of Confucius in state of Lu.

24. Ching Wang (or King): Brother.

25. Ching Wang (or King): Son. (505) Chief of Ts'ai is rebuffed at court of duke of Ch'u by a corrupt minister. The chief goes to Wu, who defeats Ch'u forcing the duke to flee. (504) Cheng (Upper Huai valley) absorbs state of Hsu (also of upper Huai valley). Pau-sz, minister to duke of Ch'u, seeks the aid of Ts'in to expel Wu and restore to duke of Ch'u. It is done.

See Prehistoric Synchrony Note 343

(500) Confucius is made magistrate of Lu. He reforms many laws and greatly improves conditions in the state. (499) He is made Minister of Justice. He takes part in a treaty concluded between Lu and Ts'i. (497) He takes measures to prevent a rebellion in Lu. (496) Made Prime Minister. The prosperity of Lu begins to grow and Ts'i becomes alarmed. (494) The duke of Ts'i gives the duke of Lu a gift against Confucius' council; Confucius retires and begins wandering about China. (487) Sung absorbs Ts'ao (both states of the lower Huai Valley). (482) Confucius returns to Lu and turns to literary work. (479) Ch'u absorbs Ch'en (of Upper Huai Valley). (478) Death of Confucius.

26. Yuan Wang: Son. (472[3]) Yueh (Chekiang and Chiangsu) conquers Wu (Chiangsu). Duke Kau-t sien of Yueh is advised not to be lenient by his minister Fan-li. Duke of Wu commits suicide (his family flees to Japan).

27. Chen Ting Wang (or Ching): Son. Disorder and strife among the states grows. Rebels drive the duke of Lu away setting up his son as a puppet. (457) The state of Tsin is divided among six officials who refuse to recognize the duke who flees to Ts'i. Tsin is now Tsin, Wei, Chau, Han and Chih (447) Ch'u absorbs Ts'ai (of Upper Huai Valley). (445) Ch'u absorbs C'hi (of Ssu Valley). (443) Jung barbarians are defeated by the duke of Ts'in.

28. K'ao Wang (or K'au): Son. (431) C'hu absorbs Chiu (of Lower Huai Valley).

29. Wei Lieh Wang: Son. Strife among states continues. (418) Yueh absorbs Yen (of Shantung). (408) Wei absorbs Chungshan (north of Yellow River). (403) Chiefs of Tsin are recognized by Wei and titles of nobility given them. Later, three (Chao, Wei and Han) join forces. Begins "Period of Warring States (Chan Kuo)".

30. An Wang (or Ngan): Son. Yellow River overflows. Duke of Ts'i is murdered by one of his ministers who seizes the dukedom and is recognized by the emperor.

31. Lieh Wang: Son. (375) Han conquers Cheng. About 371, birth of Mencius in Lu or Tseu.

32. Hsien Wang (or Hien): Son. (362) Duke of Ts'in defeats three chiefs who have absorbed Tsin. Hsien sends the duke a gift, unwise, for Ts'in has been growing in power, overshadowing many states. (360) Death of the duke of Ts'in, succeeded by son Hau. Surrounding states begin to ally against Ts'in. To maintain his power, Hau employs gifted men, one of whom is Wei-yang. He immediately institutes reforms: (1) Ten House system, (2) If two grown sons in household, one must leave and set up household or else taxes are doubled, (3) all must participate in public service; the rich with money, the poor with labor, (4) travelers must have a passport. (349) His reforms succeeding, Wei-yang introduces more reforms; divides country into 30 counties; abolishes Wu's law of land apportioned to 10 families; instead each farmer tills most suitable land and pays taxes only on cultivated land. (340) Duke of Ts'in takes title of king, directly threatening the emperor's dynasty. Wei-yang suggests war against Wei; through treachery, Wei is defeated and Ts'in absorbs much of Wei. Ch'u absorbs Tsou (of Lower Huai Valley). (337) Death of duke of Ts'in; succeeded by his son who is persuaded that Wei-yang means to overthrow him. Wei-yang and his family are put to death. (334) Ch'u absorbs Yueh. (332) Six states combine against the growing power of Ts'in.

33. Shen Ching Wang (or Shen Tsing): Son. States of Ch'u, Chau, Wei, Han and Yen ally against Ts'in and are defeated. Duke of Ts'in defeats the barbarians of the River Min and appropriates their territory.

34. Nan Wang: Son of ? (314) Duke of Ts'i invades Yen for the chief of the latter resigning his power to his minister. Ts'in, after securing neutrality of Ch'u, conquers Ts'i, then defeats Ch'u, annexing much territory - wars between the states continue, all the while Ts'in gaining first place. (306) Chao Hsiang (Chau Siang) becomes Duke of Ts'in. (286) Ch'i conquers Sung. (280) Duke of Ch'u plans to seize the royal domain but is dissuaded by Nan. (255) Ts'in conquers Chou (south of Yellow River): Alarmed at the rising power of Ts'in, Nan organizes a league of nobles against it. The duke of Ts'in leads his armies into Chou, defeats the royal troops and seizes Nan who is forced to surrender all to Ts'in. The Chow dynasty is at an end (except the feudal territory of Kung which is allowed to remain until 249 when the duke of Kung is dispossessed).

F. The CH'IN (or TS'IN) DYNASTY

1. Chao Hsiang Wang (or Siang). His first 52 years of reign are as ruler of state of Ts'in: Assumes rule in 253. The chief states opposing his power are Ch'u, Yen, Wei, Chau, Han, Ts'i and Kung. (252) State of Han submits to him.

2. Hsiao Wen Wang (or Hiau Wun): Son. Dies after a reign of only three days.

3. Chuang Hsiang Wang (or Chwan Siang): Son. Makes Lu Pu-wei (who had used his fortune to extricate the prince from prison) prime minister. (249) Duke of Kung attempts to form an alliance to crush the power of Ts'in. Chuang defeats Kung and annexes it (ending the Chau family). Meanwhile, Ch'u absorbs Lu. (248) Attacks Wei who leagues with four other cities forcing Chuang's retreat.

4. Prince Chung (Shih Hwang-Ti): illegitimate son of Queen of Ch'in and noble minister Lu; 13 years old at accession. (245) States of Chau and Wei quarrel and fight each other. (242) A plague of locusts decimates the crops: Chung offers employment to anyone who aids in easing the famine. (238) Five states confederate to defeat him but fail. (237) Domestic scandal forces Chung to release Lu Pu-wei and banish his mother to a fortress in Shansi. Chung raises his counselor Li-sze to the rank of prime minister. Lu Pu-wei accepts the post of prime minister with the duke of Ch'u, but threats from Chung forces him to suicide. Chung discovers the assassin King-k'o, employed by Tan, heir of Yen state, and accordingly (in 222) absorbs the state of Yen. (232[0]) Duke of Han surrenders his state to Chung. (228) Preparations are begun for an assault on Chau (Chao), whose armies are led by the brilliant general Li-muh (who had prevented the Hiung-nu barbarians from invading) who repulses Chung several times. Through treachery, Chung has Li-muh removed and killed; Chao is conquered. (226) State of Ch'i conquered. (225) Chung's general Li-sin attacks Ch'u - defeated (for Chung did not listen to old general Wang-t sien). Wang-t sien is recalled, leads a newer, larger army and defeats Ch'u, taking the prince prisoner and ending the state's independence (223). Meanwhile (225), Chung's armies conquer Wei. (221) The state of Ts'i is conquered: Now Chung adopts the name Hwang-Ti (sovereign divine ruler). He makes black the Imperial color He divides the country into 36 governments

or provinces, over each rules a Governor-General (Viceroy). There is a General and Provincial treasury. He begins the construction of a great wall to keep the Hiung-nu out (whom he conquered before construction begins). (212) A great council is held in Hien-yang to discuss affairs of the kingdom. Here, Li-sze, as a measure to prevent a repeat of the faction-fighting that characterized the decline to Chow dynasty, proposes all classical works be burned. Next year (211), finding that scholars are not abiding by the book burning order, Shih has 460 of the best known decapitated. He employs 700,000 criminals and prisoners in the construction of the palace of A-fang Kung within which he could escape the spirits of death: His son Fu-su complains about the money spent and is sent to general Mung-t'ien in charge of construction of the Great Wall. Shih dies on tour of the kingdom while at Sha-k'iu. Li-sze and tutor Chau-kau hide his death from Fu-su, sending him a forged note commanding suicide: Mung-t'ien proposes to march on the capital but Fu-su commits suicide. Second son Hu-hai ascends the throne but is murdered by his brother.

5. Erh Shih Hwang Ti (or Urh): Son. Taking the advice of Chau-kau, Erh orders the suicide of Mung-t'ien and 24 members of the royal family. He orders a huge, expensive, theft-proof underground tomb built for his father (employing criminals): (207) A p.o.(?) named Ch'en-sing leads a growing hoard of criminals and citizens in rebellion; defeated. Liu-pang, Hiang-liang and Hiang-yu are leading rebellious factious. Chau-kau has the emperor order the death of Li-sze. Erh orders all relatives connected with his father, mother and wife killed: Chau has Erh assassinated.

6. Tsu Ying (or Tze): Son. Is proclaimed emperor: He has Chau-kau and all his relatives killed. Meanwhile, I (a member of the ducal family of Ch'u) and two lieutenants of Hiang-yu (who has proclaimed himself ruler of Ch'u) march (206) on the capital. Liu-pang reaches the capital first and assumes the imperial status, given by Tze-ying - Marks beginning of Han Dynasty - Liu-pang, acting on the advice of his counsel Siau-ho, acts justly and withdraws to Sz-chwan. Hiang-yu arrives at the capital and murders Tsu Ying; plunders Shih Hwang Ti's tomb and rifles and burns the palace of A-fang Kung He retires to Shantung as king. (204) Desiring to be emperor, Hiang-yu has I killed - warfare with Liu-pang begins. (202) Liu-pang finally defeats Hiang-yu who commits suicide. Liu-pang, Prince of Han, ascends the throne.

G. The HAN DYNASTY

1. Kao Ti (or Kau Ti, or Kau Tsu - Liu-pang). People in his admin: Prime minister Siau-ho (who rescued the official archives from the destruction of the Ts'in capital), Han-sin (grand son of the last duke of Han and who used a ruse to defeat Hiang-yu), Chang-liang and Ch'en-p'ing. Taking Chang-liang's advice, Kao Ti moves capital from Loh-yang to Ch'angan in Shen si. Brown is imperial color. Siau-ho is commissioned to draw up a new code of laws and Han-sin to write a treatise on military tactics. (199) Mau-tun, leading a large army of the Hiung-nu, invades, regaining his lost territory and some extra. Kao Ti meets him in Shensi but is besieged in P'ing By trickery, Ch'en-p'ing rescues the emperor causing the barbarians to withdraw. Siau-ho builds a palace at Ch'angan to keep the seat of government closer to its enemies - Kao Ti was going to move it to Loyang. (197) The Hiung-nu again invade, but one of Kao Ti's ministers organizes a settlement of differences with the marriage of Mau-tun with one of Kao Ti's harem members. (196) Kao Ti goes off to battle a rebellion of one of his officers. Empress Lu accuses Han-sin of being in with the rebels and has him killed along with his relatives. The lady Ts'i has her son appointed Kao Ti's successor. (194) Kao Ti, battling another rebel, comes away with a fatal wound. He reaches the capital; dies.

2. Hui Ti (or Hwei): Son. Being 14, his prime minister is Ts'au-ts'an but real power is held by Empress Lu who has the lady Ts'i killed along with her son. This drives Hui Ti insane and Empress Lu now rules. (191) Mau-tun again threatens the empire but Empress Lu buys him off with presents of horses and chariots. (187) Hui Ti finally dies.

3. Kao Hou (Lu Shih): Mother. She begins elevating her own relatives to positions of power. Prime minister Ts'au-ts'an states this is illegal; she dismisses him and appoints Ch'en-p'ing prime minister whom she thinks is on her side. (186) She has her chosen grandson murdered (thought to be unreliable) and places a new puppet in that position. Also, this year, she reduces the weight of a cash from 1/2 oz to 1/10 oz, then later to 1/20. (179) While bathing in the river, contracts a fatal illness: She instructs her family to seize power when she dies. Ch'en-p'ing and commander of the troops Chow-p'o by a ruse discover all of Lu's followers in the army and kill them and raise a son of Hui Ti to emperor:

4. Wen Ti (or Wun): His Queen is Tau. (179) Reduces the severity of Ts'in dynasty laws and passes old age assistance laws. He also reintroduces freedom of speech. He decrees the cash to be 1/10 oz but ends private minting, setting up two mints at Chehkiang and Sz-chwan. (175?-165?) Many incursions of the Hiung-nu. A council decides that large numbers of "civilized" Jungs and Chinese settlers should settle in the north as a barrier. Wen Ti's humanity causes him to abolish four of the great punishments (brand on the face, cut off nose, cut off feet, castration) and substitute flogging. The fifth (beheading) he retains [these punishments abolished mainly through the entreaties of one T'i-ying, daughter whose father Ch'un-yu was wrongly accused of a crime]. (163) Wen Ti sends commands throughout the empire for books that escaped Shih Hwang Ti's book burning: Scholarly studies begin again in China. (160) Tremendous invasion of the Hiung-nu occurs with much slaughter of Chinese people. General Chow Ya-fu leads Wen Ti's armies and defeats the invaders.

5. Ching Ti (or King): Son. Reduces number of strokes administered for flogging and reduces size of bamboo rod

used. (155) Serious rebellion of seven princes led by prince of P'ei against the alleged machinations of Ching's councilor Ch'au-ts'o (who advised the abolition of the feudal dependencies) - but Ching has Ch'au-ts'u beheaded then finds he must send general Chow Ya-fu against the rebels to defeat and scatter them. Later, peace is concluded with the Hiung-nu by giving their chief his daughter.

6. Wu Ti: Son. Ascends throne at 17. (140) Surrounds himself with scholars: Tung Chung-shu (scholar and statesman opposes magicians deceiving the emperor), Sz-ma Siang-ju (scholar and poet) and Ki-jen (believes in governing by leaving things alone): Their influence cause the rapid spread of Confucianism but the Queen Dowager pushes Taoism which by this time has degenerated into a system of magic and the supernatural. By ridding the administration of many Confucians, the Queen brings Taoism to the fore. (133) Li Shau-kun, a Taoist, becomes an imperial confidant: Wu Ti sends him on a journey to find the elixir of longer life but the charlatan dies on his trip. (C125) A council is held that decides that the Chinese should be the aggressors against the (194-66) Hiung-Nu; a plan is devised to trick them into an ambush. But the Hiung-nu find this out and seek conquest of China: Warfare begins. Chinese generals Li-kwang, Wei-ts'ing and Ho K'u-ping are mostly successful. (121) Generals Wei-ts'ing and Ho K'u-ping invade Hiung nu territory, penetrate to Turkestan, capture chief Hin-chu and bring back a statue (of Buddha?). A limes - a continuous line of forts and military colonies from Su-chou to Tun-huang - is set up against the Hsuing-nu (=Huns). By this limes China controls the Silk Route through Tarim Basin, and is continuously challenged by the Hsuing-nu. (119) With the expenses of the wars with the Hiung-nu depleting the treasury, Wu Ti has the stockpiled silver and tin amalgamated and made into coinage. Also this year, Li-kwang is second in command in an expedition against the Hiung-nu, successful, but a sandstorm almost wipes out Li-kwang's division; he commits suicide. (117) Wu Ti enacts a property tax (being desperate for war funds) which is extremely unpopular: The wars with the Hiung-nu are usually favorable to the Chinese. (104) General Li Kwang-li on expedition against the Hiung-nu penetrates as far as Persia, taking the city of Ur-shih. Upon his return, he is given the title Viscount of Ur-shih and his sister is entered into the royal harem. (99) Li-ling, grandson of Li-kwang, leads an expedition against the Hiung-nu, unsuccessful, so he joins them. Wu Ti has Li-ling's family destroyed and, because he protested this, the historian Sz-ma-ts'ien is mutilated and imprisoned. (94) Birth of Fuh-ling by the concubine Chau. By this time the rightful heir, Li, disappears through court intrigue: His soldiers and mother are put to death. (87) Wu Ti admits his folly of listening to the Taoists and orders the destruction of their many temples and cessation of their services throughout the empire. He orders lady Chau executed (not trusting her to be regent) and appoints Ho-kwang, Kin Jin-ti and two others regents.

7. Chao Ti (or Chau (Fuh-ling)): Son. (86) The prince of Yen whose mother was one of Wu Ti's concubines tries to seize the throne but Ho-kwang stops the rebellion. (85) Chao remits the land tax where it imposes the severest hardship. (81) A Shensi man claims to be Li, son of Wu Ti and rightful heir, is killed. (80) Disastrous crop year; to help, Chao remits taxes on spirits and property, keeping taxes on salt and iron. Subu is given his freedom, he returns to China. (C75) The prince of Yen again rebels but is seized and executed. (73) Death of Chao Ti without issue. Ho-kwang decides on Chao Ti's uncle is placed on the throne but is so incompetent that after three months is removed. With permission of the Queen Dowager, the grandson of the missing Li (son of Wu Ti) is enthroned:

8. Hsuan Ti (or Suan): Having been among the people before his elevation, he is very compassionate toward them. (70) Hsuan recommends his plebian wife to be Queen. Ho-kwang's wife has the queen and her daughter poisoned but Ho-kwang convinces Hsuan that their deaths were natural. (69) Ho-kwang's dau. is made Queen, later, Ho dies. (66) Hsuan appoints his eldest son (by his plebian wife) his successor. Angered, Ho-hien, Hsuan's mother-in-law (who wishes the succession to be in her family) plots his death. She is killed, along with her son - Hsuan divorces the Queen. (65) Famine (and brigandage) hits Hai-po region. Hsuan appoints Kung-sui to put down the disorder; which he does. (C60) Hsuan refuses to have anything to do with the Taoists who have been trying to regain their influence. (55) Tatar chief Hau-han submits to the emperor, becoming a tributary.

9. Yuan Ti: Son. Prime minister is Kung. At first he rules fairly but falters under the increasing influence of the palace eunuch. (41) Barbarian uprising in Shensi cruelly put down causing the survivors to flee: Chinese settlers move in. (35) General Chin-tang, without permission from Yuan (for he knew Shih-hien would be jealous) marches against the Hiung-nu chief Chih-chih, captures and burns his capital and sends his head to Yuan, who (against the wishes of Shih-hien) listens to his ministers and rewards Ching-tang with a viscountship. Hau-han is recalled to court and made ruler of his ex-domain and that of Chih-chih: To bind this deal, the beautiful Chau-kun is given to him as queen

10. Ch'eng Ti: Son. He banishes Shih-hien to a distant part of the empire but he dies on the way. Ch'eng enobles seven of his uncles. (C25) Ch'eng (who likes to mingle - in disguise- with the lowest level of society) falls in love with the beautiful dancer Chau Fei-yen: She becomes part of his harem. Soon, Ch'eng divorces his queen placing Chau Fei-yen in that position with her sister Ho-tuh lady in waiting. (14) The crafty Wang Mang (whose aunt was Yuan Ti's wife) is recommended to Ch'eng Ti by his dying father as being a superior person: Ch'eng gives him a high official position which Wang Mang uses to his advantage. (7) A minister tries to have Ch'eng's divorced queen become a member of the harem. Wang Mang reports this to Ch'eng: The emperor appoints Wang Mang CIC. Ch'eng Ti dies a mysterious death. Accused, Ho-tuh commits suicide.

11. Ai Ti (or Ngai): Nephew. Queen is Hu-how. Wang Mang resigns all of his appointments and retires. Tung-hien

becomes CIC: He promulgates much needed land reform laws to enable the poor to keep their land and not be swallowed up by large landholders. Concerned, however, the high officials and princes prevent the law from being known by the populace.

12. P'ing Ti: (great-grandson of Yuan Ti). Being only seven, he is selected as emperor by Hu-how who sets herself up as regent. She calls in Wang Mang to aid her with the government. He destroys Tung-hien and seizes his estate and begins to take over the whole government. (3) Wang Mang marries his daughter to P'ing Ti and as a safety measure banishes his mother and uncles from the palace. Wang Mang's son complains that he prevents P'ing Ti from seeing his mother; Wang Mang casts his son into prison: - suicide. (6) Wang Mang poisons P'ing Ti. The Queen Dowager selects

13. Ju Tzu Ying (or Ju Tze), two years old (a descendant of Hsuan Ti) with Wang Mang as regent. The princes of the house of Han begin organizing against Wang but he keeps them off. (8) Finally Wang Mang deposes Ju Tzu.

H. The HSIN DYNASTY (usurpers)

1. Wang Mang. He promulgates a story supporting his legitimacy that is not believed. He orders the laws issued by Tung-hien to come into effect. His time is spent battling growing rebellion of the Hans. His reign is one of increasing rebellion (one major one in Shantung led by one Fanchung whose followers dye their eyebrows red and are called the "Eyebrows"). Even the Hsiung-nu feel free to invade for their allegiance was with the Han. (23) Two Han cousins, Liu-huan and Liu-sin, having acquired a large army, hold a council. It is decided that the indolent Liu-huan be named emperor (for the intelligent and powerful Liu-sin is feared). So Liu-huan becomes emperor as 2. Huai Yang Wang (or Hwai). Wang Mang sends an army against him but is eventually defeated. Wang Mang flees to his palace where he sees his daughter kill herself. Soon he is butchered. While Liu-sin is succeeding to bring unity once more to the empire, Huai Yang has allowed the government to fall into the hands of mercenary officials: The people are taxed and crushed as they battle for power and wealth. Fearing the growing stature of Liu-sin, Huai Yang's ministers order him to the palace. On the advice of his generals, Liu-sin refuses: named emperor as:

G. (cont) HAN RESTORED

14. Kuang Wu Ti (or Kwang): The Glorious Martial Emperor. The "Red Eyebrows" attack Huai Yang Wang at Changan, take it and kill Huai Yang. Kuang Wu sends general Teng-yu against them but manages to fight to a draw. (26) Kuang Wu establishes his capital at Loyang. He sends general P'ing-i against the "Red Eyebrows" (who have claimed the boy Liu as emperor) and through a trick totally defeats them. (31) By this time Kuang Wu has defeated all rebellious elements and has firmly established the house of Han on the throne. (41) Queen Ching-tseh and her sister Ching-urh of the Tonquin leads a rebellion against Chinese suzerainty. Kuang Wu sends general Ma-yuan who completely defeats the Tonquin, beheading the sisters. (45) The Hsiung-nu again invade China; general Ma-yuan leads the army to defeat them. (48) Uprising of native tribes in Wuling (modern Hunan), general Ma-yuan and another lead the troops against them (outcome?). Ma-yuan dies of sickness and is blamed for being corrupt; his widow disproves this.

15. Ming Ti: Son. Appoints Pan-hu historiographer. Empire is at peace. (61) Marries Ma-how, daughter of general Ma-yuan. Also, he has built a "Cloud Tower" in which he places portraits of the 28 great generals that had been the means of reestablishing the Han dynasty. (66) Hearing of a great and powerful spirit (Fo = Buddha) in the west, Ming sends ambassadors to find out and bring back books and info. They do, and Ming adopts the new faith. Soon, Buddhist shrines are erected throughout the empire. This year Ming revises the criminal code, making capital crimes commutable by monetary payment (treasury running low). (73) Generals Tou Ku and Pan Ch'ao defeat the Hsiung-nu near Lake Barkol. (74) Hsiung-nu counteroffensive; they conquer Kashgara. (75) Near Yarkand, the two generals defeat the Hsiung-nu. (75 to about 95) Constant struggle to keep Chinese control of the silk route.

16. Chang Ti: Son. With his mother Ma-chi, he (18 years old) reigns a peaceful empire. His queen is Tau. The Hsiung-nu don't like him. (80) Hsiung-nu invade. General Pan-ch'ao leads the Chinese and defeats the invaders with great slaughter. (88) Hsiung-nu again invade; generals Pan-ch'ao and Tau-hien defeat them with great slaughter. During this reign, general Pan-ch'ao has distinguished himself in Turkestan, in the state of Shen-shen and in Khoten in his wars against the Hsiung-nu.

17. Ho Ti (related to?). Being only 10 years old, the Empress-Dowager Tau is regent. His cousin Tau-hien has one of the nobles murdered (jealous). Despite opposition of high officials (who demand death), Tau permits Tau-hien to lead an army against the Hsiung-nu. (90) This he does with Pan-ch'ao as his lieutenant. Battle of Yen-jan achieves great victory. Tau-hien returns to China where he is heaped with honors; Pan-ch'ao leads his men on, reaching the Caspian Sea (dies 102). (92) Tau-hien joins a conspiracy with the Tau princes to dethrone Ho Ti; it is discovered and all are killed: Involved, historiographer Pan-hu is imprisoned, where he dies. As an honor to the eunuch who discovered the plot, he is raised to the position of high mandarin, able to take part in government councils. (95) About this time Pan Ch'ao is made governor-general at Kucha: trouble with the Hsiung-nu continues. (96) Great drought in northern part of the empire; Ho Ti remits all taxes for this year. (97) Pan Ch'ao sends Kan Ying to reconnoiter borders of Parthian Empire and collect information on Ta-t'sin (Roman Empire). (100) About this time

Pan Yang, son of Pan Ch'ao, succeeds as governor-general at Kucha. (102) Ho Ti divorces his queen and marries a grand-daughter of general Teng-yu. About this time general Pan-ch'au asks to retire due to old age. Ho Ti hesitates but Pan-chau, sister of Pan-hu, intercedes and Pan-ch'au is retired.

18. Shang Ti: Son. three months old, dies after eight months.

19. An Ti (or Ngan): Nephew of Ho Ti. 12 years old, Ho Ti's widow is regent. (108) A great drought afflicts China, the regent does all she can, including releasing wrongly imprisoned people. (110) Due to poverty, crop failure and local misrule, brigandage breaks out in Honan. The official Yu-hu is sent to put it down. (111) Yu-hu succeeds by appealing to individual honor. (114) An Ti appoints all distinguished commoners government officials. (115) An Ti's son Po (adopted by the queen, son of one of the harem ladies) is proclaimed his successor. An makes a eunuch a member of the Privy Council. He also raises his foster mother Wang Sheng and her daughter Peh-ying to officials: Growing corruption begins in the Chinese court. (126) Death of An Ti. His queen, afraid of Po (for she had had his mother killed) appoints one of Ch'eng Ti's descendants, a child, as heir with herself regent and brother Yen-hien CIC. Yen-hien has the influential court eunuchs executed and Wang sheng and Peh-ying banished. In six months the "emperor" dies and pressure grows to place the rightful heir, Po, on the throne. He does as:

20. Shun Ti (13 years old). He orders the execution of Yen-hien and imprisonment of the Queen Dowager. (133) Shun passes a law stating no one can hold any government employment unless brought forward by their district magistrate, known of good character and at least 40 years old. (141) Breakout of brigandage in capital province. Shun appoints Li-ku (a mandarin) to find the cause; which is corrupt officials. Shun degrades 40 but is dissuaded from further degradings by Liang-ki (brother of queen Liang) who has Shun transfer Li-ku to another district. (142) An official of the court informs Shun that the most corrupt official in the kingdom is Liang-ki, but Shun has not the courage to sack him. Liang-ki has his accuser transferred to a distant part of the empire.

21. Ch'ung Ti: Son. Two years old, he dies in a year.

22. Chih Ti: Eight years old; sixth generation descendant of Chang Ti. Queen Dowager Liang is regent. She and her brother Liang-ki absorb all power of the state. She appoints Li-ku as her assistant. Li-ku has a law passed stating all students after mastering the Confucian classics, spend three years in the capital studying law and methods of governing the state: After exams, the fittest would be made magistrates. (147) Chih Ti lets it be known his distrust of Liang-ki who has the emperor poisoned. Liang-ki now has another descendant of Chang Ti, 15 years old, appointed emperor as:

23. Huan Ti (or Hwan). Queen Dowager Liang is regent but real power is held now by Liang-ki who is invested with a grant of territory with 30,000 families and all its revenues. He marries his younger sister, Tau, to Huan Ti. (150) About this time the Han dynasty returns to the defensive, withdrawing from the Tarim limes Also, about this time, begins period of Sien-pi (Tungus-Mongols) who overcome the Hsiung-nu in vicinity of Mongolia, becoming masters there. (151) Reign title: Yuan Chia. Huan Ti assumes the government and appoints Liang-ki Prime minister; He almost openly flaunts his corruption. (158) A censor petitions the throne stating the empire's miseries are due to Liang-ki's misrule and excessive exactions. Next day the censor is found dead. (159) Death of Queen Dowager Liang. Liang-ki orders the father of one of Huan Ti's most beloved concubines killed. The father escapes to Hwang Ti, who then has Liang-ki ordered killed. The latter and his wife commit suicide. Royal troops slay both sides of his house. The crown seizes Liang-ki's treasury which is so great allows the empire's taxes to be remitted for a year. (166) Huan Ti commissions a eunuch to build a temple in Lung Hu Shan (in present Kiangsi) in honor of Lao-tzu: He appoints a man of the Chang clan (Chang Tau-ling), to be high priest of the Taoist sect. Huan Ti puts away his Queen Tau and marries the daughter of Tau-bu who becomes prime minister.

24. Ling Ti (a descendant of Chang Ti). 12 years old, queen dowager is regent while Tau-bu is prime minister. Tau-bu, thwarted in his efforts to govern by the eunuchs, plans their destruction. The plan is discovered and the chief eunuch persuades Ling Ti that Tau-bu plans to do away with him. Ling Ti has Tau-bu and many of his adherents slain and the regent banished. (170) About this time the Yueh-Chih are driven from Mongolia to Sogdiana and north-west India. (173) General Sun-kien suppresses a rebellion in Chehkiang. (174) Famous scholar Ts'ai-yung draws admirers from all over to witness his cutting of the Five Classics (Book of Changes (I Ching), Historical Classic, Book of Poetry, Record of Rites and the Spring and Autumn) in stone. (175 to C275) About this time the Tungus-Mongols extend their power from Liao-tung peninsula to Gobi desert; driving the Hsiung-nu upon the Great Wall in Ordos and north of the province of Shansi. (177) The Sienpi invade China but are defeated by Chau-pau who had to sacrifice his mother to do so. He soon dies of grief over the affair. (178) The system of examination for degrees is instituted; instead of filial piety and purity of character, candidates for magistracy are examined in the Confucian classics, writing of poetry, letter writing and penmanship. (179) Ling Ti raises his concubine, the lady Ho, to rank of Queen who has her brother Ho Tsin made prime minister who soon is CIC. (184) Chang-kioh, an occultist, leads a rebellion (the "Yellow Turbans") in north-east China, soon gaining control of all the northern provinces. Ho-tsin and his two lieutenants Tung-cho and Ts'au-ts'au, in several months, battle the rebels and restore peace: Liu-pei, a distant relative of the imperial family, led a group of volunteers against the Yellow Turbans. (189) Death of Ling Ti.

25. Shao Ti: Son. Ling Ti's widow is regent. A minister advises Ho-tsin to massacre the eunuchs - he is for it but his sister is not (too cruel). So it is decided that Tung-cho will march his army on the capital to do the deed, Ts'au-ts'au

opposes this ("weak monarch"), but is ignored and Tung-cho marches. The eunuchs kill Ho-tsin but one of his generals fires the palace. The eunuchs flee and are slaughtered by the troops of Yuan-shan: The young princes escape. Next day the princes are returned and the regent is found. Tung-cho assumes direction of the state, deposes the young emperor, kills the regent and assumes the regency over the emperor's simple-minded brother: 26. Hsien Ti (or Hien). Tung-cho has the deposed emperor murdered. Many now rise in rebellion against Tung-cho: Yuan-shan leads a powerful party. Liu-piau of the house of Han controls a territory south of the Yang-tze. Ts'au-ts'au reigns over Shantung. Sun-kien rules Wu but dies in battle and is succeeded by two of his four sons. Liu-chiong rules Sz-chwan until dispossessed by Liu-pei. Alarmed at this, Tung-cho decides to move the capital from Loyang to Shensi. (191) Tung-cho plunders Loyang and demolishes the city; his forces keep those of Ts'au-ts'au from assaulting the people on their move. Yuan-shan takes possession of the demolished city and begins reconstruction: He appoints a Han prince to the throne. (192) Tung-cho is murdered by his lieutenant, Lupu. Now four generals appeal to the faithful Wang-yun for forgiveness, he refuses and they kill him. Hsien Ti escapes them, going to Loyang. Ts'au-ts'au offers him protection, Hsien accepts, thereby becoming his puppet. Liu-pei leaves Ts'au-ts'au and becomes an independent contender for the crown. (201) By this time Ts'au-ts'au's reign has become so disliked because of its oppression, one of the harem ladies plans to have him done away with, but Ts'au-ts'au finds out and, despite Hsien Ti's pleading, has her cruelly murdered. Ts'au-ts'au invites the capable Sze-ma-i to aid him in consolidating his power; threatening him with death if he doesn't. Also, about this time, Sun-k'wan begins establishing himself along the southern bank of the Yang-tze. (208) Death of Liu-piau of King-chow; his son submits to Ts'au-ts'au without Liu-pei's knowledge. Battle of Ch'ang-pan bridge: Liu-pei is defeated, he flees to Chehkiang while his son Atau is rescued by Chau-yun. Ts'au-ts'au heads for Sun-k'wan who is joined by Liu-pei, general Chu ko-liang and strategist Chow-pu: Battle of Red Ridge; Ts'au-ts'au is severely defeated: Sun-k'wan takes Kingchow which he bestows on Liu-pei and gives the latter his sister in marriage. (211) Liu-tsang of Sz-chwan invites Liu-pei to join him against Ts'au-ts'au; he does, leaving Chu ko-liang and Kwang-yu in charge of Kiang-chow. Ts'au-ts'au now attacks Sun-k'wan but, thanks to general Lu-mung, the latter is prepared: Battle of the Ju-su; Ts'au-ts'au is turned back. (214) Liu-pei (following his general's advice) besieges Liu-tsang in his capital and siezes Sz-chwan for himself. Also, Ts'au-ts'au discovers the Empress Fuh is trying to find a way to do away with him; he has her killed along with her two sons. (216) Ts'au-ts'au forces Hsien Ti to marry his daughter. (217) Ts'au-ts'au advances against Kingchow and is defeated by Kwang-yu who, upon his return, is defeated and slain by Sun-k'wan who assumes control of Kingchow. (221) Hsien Ti resigns and becomes Duke of Shan-yung. Death of Ts'au-ts'au, succeeded by son Ts'au-p'ei who rules in Hsien Ti's name for 10 months then seizes the crown himself, has Hsien Ti assassinated and rules as I-1. Wen Ti.

SAN KUO: EPOCH OF THE THREE KINGDOMS

WEI (central and northern provinces)

WU (provinces south of the Yangtze)

SHU-HAN (Sz-chwan).

I-1. Chao Lieh Ti (or Chau): (Previously known as Liu-pei). Considered legitimate ruler because he is a distant relative of the house of Han. He appoints Chu ko-liang (known as K'ung-meng) prime minister. His queen is Sun-k'uan's sister. His son Atau is made heir to the throne. (222) He gathers an army of over 700,000 to march against Sun-k'uan to avenge his friend Kwan-yu's death by Sun-k'uan's general Lu-meng. Chu ko-liang tries to stop this folly - unsuccessful. Liu-pu's friend Chang-fei pushes preparations so forcefully that he is murdered. Sun-k'uan sends ambassadors to Liu-pei urging an end to their quarrel and to unite against Wei. Unsuccessful, Sun-k'uan arms and submits to Ts'au-p'ei of Wei (Wen Ti) who creates Sun as Duke of Wei. (223) Battle of Hian-ting; Liu-pei is defeated with great slaughter and is only saved from capture by the trickery of general Chu Ko-liang (his "Eight Line of Battle Plan"). Liu-pei flees to Ying-ngan. Now Ts'au-p'ei (Wen Ti) fears Sun-k'uan and asks for his son as hostage, the latter refuses and nothing comes of it.

I-2. Ssu Ti (How Chu; name Atau-son) Prime minister is Chu Ko-liang. He concludes peace with How Chu's uncle Sun-k'uan to better withstand the power of Wei. Wen Ti immediately marches against Sun-k'uan but is stopped by the Yang-tze and general Luh-sun's arrangements. (224) Chu Ko-liang now begins preparations for an assault on Wei. But first he fears the Burmese who may attack from the south while he is engaged with Wei to the north. So he prepares to battle them first. (225) Wars with Burma begin. (226) After seven battles in which the Burmese king is captured and released each time; with such a demonstration of magnanimity, Burma and Chu Ko-liang conclude a peace. (227) Death of Ts'au-p'ei (Wen Ti): Succeeded by son Ts'au-jui as

I-2. Ming Ti. Chu Ko-liang continues war preparations against Wei. (228) Chu Ko-liang marches against Wei, with general Masu leading the forward division. The army of Wei under Sze-ma-i defeats and almost annihilates Ma-su's division, panic strikes and Chu Ko-liang seeks refuge in Hanchung. About to be besieged, Chu Ko-liang uses a trick to have Sze-ma-i retreat: The Han general flees. Meanwhile, Ts'au-jui (Ming Ti of Wei) sends an army against Sun-k'uan (of Wu): Cho Ko-liang sends assistance: The army of Wei is defeated and the general killed. (229) Sun-k'uan of Wu takes the title emperor as K-1. Ta Ti (retroactive to 222); (230) Sze-ma-i of Wei attempts to capture Hanchung but is several times repulsed by Cho Ko-liang. (231) Cho Ko-liang marches into Shensi against Sze-ma-i,

the latter is defeated. (233) The 2 armies meet again and pass taunts back and forth but do not battle. (237) Death of Cho Ko-liang: Each of the three kingdoms attend to internal affairs. (240) Death of Ts'au-jui (Ming Ti) of Wei. He is succeeded by his son Fang as I-3. Fei Ti under the guardianship of Sze-ma-i and Ts'au-sung (a palace officer). (248) By this time Ssu Ti has given up the Han government to a corrupt eunuch. Sze-ma-i is plotting to overthrow the government of Wei. This year, taking advantage of the royal family's being away from the palace for a ceremonial function (opposed by political advisor Hwan-hwan), Sze-ma-i seizes the government of Wei, executes all of the royal family except Fei Ti and executes Hwan-hwan and his family: Sze-ma-i has himself made prime minister. (249) Two high Wei officials plot to overthrow Sze-ma-i, the plot is discovered and the prime minister has the officials and 1,000 others killed. Later he dies and is succeeded by his son Sze-ma-sze who also acquires the office of CIC. (252) Death of Sun-k'uan (Ta Ti), succeeded by his son Liang as K-2. Fei Ti as "Emperor". Chuko, Liang's general, readies the embankment at the mouth of the River Ju-su for an eminent attack from Wei. (253) General Chuko, because of his success, becomes quite overbearing and is thusly accused of plotting rebellion. K-2 Fei Ti has him and his family put to death. (254) Sze-ma-sze has a high official of Wei killed for suspicion against him. Later, he has the queen and her father executed and then deposes I-3 Fei Ti and places Ts'au-jui's nephew Ts'au-mau on the throne as I-4. Shao Ti. The armies of the new princes of Wei and Han (Ssu Ti) meet in Shensi but withdraw after an indecisive encounter. (258) K-3. Ching Ti. (260) I-4 Shao Ti and three of his ministers develop a plot to do away with the oppressive Sze-ma-sze. Before it is about to be executed, two of the ministers inform Sze-ma-sze about it: He has Shao Ti and the third minister killed: He places Ts'au-hwan (one of Ts'au-t's'au's descendants) on the throne as I-5. Yuan Ti. (261) J-2 Ssu Ti places himself completely in the hands of a eunuch and a Taoist priest. Gen Ch'iang-i, disgusted at the way the government of Han is being conducted, withdraws to the borders to keep out marauding barbarians. (263) Death of Sze-ma-sze: He is succeeded by his brother Sze-ma-chou, who decides to crush out the remains of the Han dynasty. (264) Death of K-3 Ching Ti who is succeeded by his cousin as K-4. Mo Ti. Collecting a large army, Sze-ma-chou marches on Sz-chwan, J-2 Ssu Ti's general Ch'iang-i assembles what troops he can to meet the coming enemy and sends messages to the capital for aid. Ssu Ti asks his advisors, the eunuch Wang-ho and the Taoist, for advice and they say do nothing. Ch'iang-i is defeated and retreats to Chien-ko where he is besieged by Chung-hwei. Chun-hwei's second in command, Ting-ai, leads a flying column off to take the capital Ch'ung-tu. He reaches it and demands surrender. Wang-ho advises submission but the son of Ssu Ti orders defenses and sends messengers to collect every available soldier. Ssu Ti says no to this and follows Wang-ho's advice. The prince and his family commit suicide. Ting-ai enters the city and has Wang-ho killed and asks Sze-ma-chou if he can stay for a few years to finish the conquest of Szchwan. Now the generals of Wei begin plotting to overthrow Sze-ma-chou and Ch'iang-i "join" them in a plan to eliminate Ssu Ti's enemies. The plot is discovered and all are slain. Wei absorbs Szchwan and Sze-ma-chou makes Ssu Ti "Duke of Pleasure". (265) Sze-ma-chou assumes the title of king, makes his wife queen and son heir apparent. He bestows title Duke of Tsin on Yuan Ti. He is still faced with uprisings in Szchwan. Soon, he dies and is succeeded by his son Sze-ma-yen. Yuan Ti, recognizing his rule is now farcical, resigns in favor of his son Wu Ti.

L. The CHIN (Tsin) DYNASTY

I. Wu Ti (30 years old) gives his dynasty the name Tsin. He immediately undertakes the reorganization of economic and legal priorities much to the consternation of rich mandarins. He appoints his incapable son Chung as heir. (270) With statesman and commander Yanghu, Wu Ti plans to overthrow Wu and once again unite China: He makes Yanghu governor of Kingchow and begins to win over the people of Wu by fairness and economic stability and refusing to allow the army to live off the land. (273) Wu Ti's son Chung marries a wife of the family of Ku, she is cruel and wicked. Also, the "White-horsed Barbarians" invade Szchwan but Wu Ti's army joins them. Another army is raised and expels them. Meanwhile, Wu Ti prepares to invade Wu. Since they must cross the mighty Yang-tze, Mo Ti orders measures taken to thwart this: The attempt is given up, but Yanghu's policies are winning over the people of Wu. Yanghu and Luh-k'ang, general of Wu's forces, become friends. (275) Death of Luh-k'ang; his five sons are opposed to Yanghu's army and policies. Also, Chow-ch'u is appointed commander of the army in Szchwan to prevent incursions of the Burmese and other barbarians and to prevent rebellion by adherents of the late dynasty. Also, Wu Ti's queen dies and he marries her sister. (275-300) Admittance of the Hsiung-nu into the Chinese empire (especially Shansi province) where many are admitted into the army. (278) Yanghu is made a viscount and made CIC of army being gathered to overthrow Wu. (279) Yanghu dies. Meanwhile, Sun-hau (Mo Ti?) of Wu's irresponsible rule is creating unrest. (280) Tsin general Towyin in Kingchow asks Wu Ti to take Wu, for there would be no opposition. The five sons of Luh-k'ang submit, the army crosses the Yang-tze and marches to Nanking. Sun-hau gives up, ending the independent state of Wu (Wu Ti makes him "Duke Resignation to the Will of Heaven") and the Tsin dynasty of Wu Ti rules a united China. Wu Ti now gives himself over to luxurious indulgence. (282) Death of Sun-hau. (284) Wu Ti receives presents from Rome via the Tarim Basin. (285) The Siempi invade Shensi beginning a period of warfare. Meanwhile, princes of the Tarim Basin pay homage to Wu Ti to escape conquest by the Siempi. (289) After four years of battle, the Siempi are driven from the empire. (290) Reign title: T'ai Hsi.

L-2. Hui Ti (or Hwei): Son. Reign title; Yung Hsi. His queen assumes the imperial power (though allows Wu Ti's

widow and her father Yang t'sun customary honor and position). (291) Reign title; Yung P'ing, then Yuan K'ang. Hui Ti's queen carries out a plot and has Yang t'sun and Wu Ti's widow killed by order of Hui Ti (despite Yang t'sun's safeguard given him by Wu Ti). (293) The Sienpi invade China, penetrating into Honan, they are finally defeated and driven out (295) The Ch'iang barbarians from west of Szchwan and Kanush penetrate to Shensi: Hui Ti sends CIC Hia-heu with second Chow-ch'u against them. Battle of Singanfu, Hia-heu has sent Chow-ch'u ahead and being jealous of his fame doesn't hurry to his aid: Cho-ch'u and his men are slaughtered. Next day Hia-heu advances against the Ch'iang and is defeated and killed. (296) Hui Ti sends general Mungkwan against the Ch'iang who defeats them and drives them back into their territory. Meanwhile, Hui Ti's queen without regard for public opinion is accumulating more and more power. (300) By this time the queen has had Hui Ti's son Luh killed. Sze-ma-lun, seeing that the queen plans to exterminate all of the family of Sze-ma-i to replace it with her own, plots to do away with her: He seizes Hui Ti and places him in a safe place then has the queen starved to death: He then exterminates her family of Ku. Sze-ma-lun becomes prime minister with Sun-siu his political advisor. The latter advises putting to death the great mandarins, including Shih-ch'ung, the richest man in China. (302) About this time Hui Ti's brothers rise against Sze-ma-lun's plans to become emperor, combining their forces and kill him. One brother becomes CIC and the others are placed in powerful positions - the brother Prince Ts'i is the real ruler; Hui Ti is again a figurehead. Soon Prince Ts'i is murdered by a brother (Ngai) while brothers Yung and Ying rebel. Ngai and Hui Ti march against Ying but Yung seizes the capital slaughtering 10,000 citizens. Ying kills Ngai and joins Yung in the capital: Yung and Ying divide the imperial power. (304) Liuyen, ruler of a large district south of the Yangtze leads a rebellion declaring he is rightful heir to the Hans, being a descendant of a Han-Hiungnu marriage, gaining control over all Hsiung-nu foederati - establishes state of Ch'eng Han (Shensi capital; see LL-1). (306) Yueh, Prince of the E'n Sea, raises a resurrection in Shantung; he kills all of the opposing mandarins, seizes Hui Ti and moves the capital to Loyang He appoints himself prime minister. (307) Death of Hui Ti; succeeded by:

L-3. Huai Ti (or Hwai, Sze-ma-chi): Brother. Yueh retires from the court. (308) Liuyen proclaims himself king of Han. Later, Yueh enters the capital and slaughters many of Huai Ti's loyalists who would oppose Yueh's usurpation: (309) Rise of kingdom of Former Chao in Sha nsi (see LL-2). (310) Death of Liuyen, he is succeeded by his brother Liuch'ang. (311) Yueh is made CIC and is killed marching against Liuch'ang who is conquering Kingchow. Wangyen becomes CIC but is defeated and slain by the Hsiung-nu who march against the capital: Huai Ti flees to Ch'ang-an in Shensi but is captured by general Liu-yau and sent to Liu-ch'ang in Peking. Liuch'ang makes Huai Ti duke of P'ing-yang and general Liu-yau is placed in charge of Lohyang. Barbarians fall upon China, mainly Hsiung-nu, Sien-pi and T'o-pa (a body of Turk or Mongol tribes). Soon provinces of Chihli, Shan-si, Shen-si, Shan-tung and Ho-nan are torn from China. There is a lull in barbarian attentions in the west as inter-tribal conflicts arise. (311-350) Rise of the Juan-juan (a Mongol tribe) in Mongolia who make themselves master there Now they begin asserting power from Gulf of Korea to Altai mountains, pushing the Hephthalites upon Sogdiana and Bactria who in turn are pressing upon the Shen-si barbarians. (313) Liu-ch'ang tires of Huai Ti, has him deposed and places his brother on the throne as

L-4. Min Ti Liuch'ang treats the deposed Huai Ti with indignity, arousing much anger. (315) Liuch'ang orders the execution of Huai Ti and his loyalists. Now Wangtsun, governor of Chihli, plots Liuch'ang's overthrow which is discovered by Liu-yau of Lohyang. By a trick, Liu-yau gains Wangtsun's trust and (against the latter's general's advice) meets him; Wangtsun is killed and Liuch'ang gains control of Chihli. (316) Wangchi, governor of Kwangchow, raises a rebellion to found his own dynasty in southern China. The famous gen T'au-k'an is sent against him, crushes the rebellion (ending the Western Chin dynasty) and becomes governor of Kwangchow. (317) Liu-yau of Lo-hyang captures Ch'angngan and all the towns on the way, defeating the two generals Lu and Liang sent against him: They kill themselves rather than joining Liu-yau (see LL-3). Min Ti is sent to Liuch'ang in Peking where he is made Viscount of "The Peaceful Heart". Eventually Liuch'ang has Min Ti killed.

L-5. Yuan Ti; a prince of Nanking, a descendant of the female line of the family of Sze-ma-i, believing in a prophecy of the eventual rule of his family, hearing of Min Ti's murder, proclaims himself emperor (Eastern Chin dynasty). His son Shau is made heir and placed in charge of the famous teacher Yuliang. A few months later, Liuch'ang and family are killed in a palace fire; only his son Ts'an survives: He is killed by the CIC who desires Liuch'ang's power. (319) Hearing of this, Liu-yau marches from Ch'ang-an but general Shihleh from Loyang arrives first and kills the usurping general. Liu-yau proclaims himself emperor and Shihleh CIC. Liu-yau moves his capital from Peking to Ch'angngan. Shihleh (a Chieh), angered at being accused of plotting rebellion, does; calls the dynasty he founds the Later Chau (see LL-4). (320) Yuan Ti plans to restrain the power of Wangtun, general of Kingchow and brothers of Wangtu, loyal palace officer: Yuan sends his uncle as watch over Wangtun who decides to ignore him. (321) Wang-tun decides, against his chief's advice, to rebel. He begins by suggesting to Yuan Ti that his two officials Liu and Tiau be punished for treason: Angered, Yuan Ti orders Wangtun's death. Wangtun seizes the city in which the imperial commissioner resides, killing him (he was Yuan Ti's uncle). Liu and Tiau advise Yuan Ti to put to death all of Wangtun's relatives in the capital, but the prime minister Chow-i intercedes on the behalf of Wangtu for his loyalty; Yuan Ti does not accept Liu and Tiau's advice. Yuan Ti places Wangtu in command of an army to oppose Wangtun, who is victoriously advancing. (322) Having extended himself in Wuchang and repulsed royal troops five different times, Wangtun advances on Nanking. Yuan Ti sends Liu and Tiau away with their

troops as they can no longer help Chow-i, Wangtau and the eldest Wang brother Wangpin go to Wangtun's camp to dissuade his rebellion. After the rebel has Chow-i killed, his two brothers manage to talk him out of his rebellion (after receiving gifts from Yuan Ti) and he withdraws to Kingchow. Wangtau is appointed prime minister.

L-6. Ming Ti (Siau; son). Wangtun sends a request to Ming Ti for an appointment closer to the capital. Fearful of his purpose, Ming Ti hesitates: Wangtun, opposing his brother's entreaties, prepares to march, he appoints his son Ying CIC. Ming Ti sends four armies against the rebel and Wangtun, ill, consults a seer who predicts his death - the seer is killed. Too sick to lead, Wangtun sends his army under Chau who is defeated. Wangtun dies and Ying conceals this fact for fear of disbandment. A second battle scatters the rebel army, Ying drowns in the Yang-tze. T'au-k'an is apptd governor of Kingchow. (326) On his deathbed, Ming Ti places his five year old son in the care of Yu-liang his brother-in-law, Wangtau and Pien-k'un. He appoints Queen Yu regent.

L-7. Ch'eng Ti: Son. Wangtau withdraws from public life and gradually all power comes into the hands of Yu-liang, incompetent and somewhat cruel. (327) Suspicious of Satsun, Yu-liang calls the commander to the capital against Wangtau and Pien-k'un's insistence that this would only begin a rebellion. Satsun, knowing his life is at stake, marches on Nanking. Defeating an army under Pien-k'un, Satsun enters Nanking and makes himself master. Meanwhile Wangtau brings Ch'eng Ti to the throne and, humbled, Satsun appoints himself prime minister. Meanwhile, Yu-liang is trying to collect an army to oppose Satsun but it is slow for Yu-liang is not liked (in fact, T'au-k'an, governor of Kingchow, disappointed at not being one of Ch'eng Ti's guardians, had to be convinced of his fate if Satsun is successful before he joins Yu-liang). Seeing the gathering two armies (one is commanded by Yu) Satsun takes Ch'eng Ti and withdraws to the better fortified city of Wuchang, which is besieged. With Yu-liang's provisions running out, a detachment under Maupau raids Satsun's commissariat city of Kuyang. This forces Satsun into the offensive and he is killed. His troops raise his brother Suyih to CIC and the battle rages. (328) Finally Kuyang is captured and Ch'eng Ti is freed. (329) A battle is fought between Liu-yau [of Former Chao] and Shih-leh [of Later Chao]: Liu-yau is killed and succeeded by his son. (330) Shih-leh has Liu-yau's son killed and he proclaims himself emperor. (333) Death of Shih-leh who is succeeded by his son Fung. (334) Fung is killed by CIC Shih-hu who becomes "emperor". Meanwhile, Liying of Szchwan [of Ch'eng-Han] dies and is succeeded by his son Chi. (335) Shih-hu moves his capital from Peking to Loyang. (336) Shih-hua, a Buddhist, issues an edict allowing citizens of China to become Buddhist priests (up to now only foreigners). (337) Appearance of state of Former Yen (see LL-5). (343) Dying, Ch'eng Ti, taking his ministers advice, appoints his brother Yo heir and his sons princes.

L-8. K'ang Ti (Yo; brother). He issues a royal edict declaring Shih-hu a rebel against the emperor. The rebel defeats an army sent against him, its general commits suicide. Hwan-wan is appointed CIC.

L-9. Mu Ti (or Muh): Son, three years old). Queen-Dowager Ch'u regent. Hwan-wan is made governor of Kingchow and Yin-hau becomes palace official through recommendation of Mu Ti's uncle Ch'u-p'eu. Hwan-wan plans to march against Li-shih of Szchwan [Ch'eng-Han] who has murdered Chi and claims to be Prince of Han; Ch'ung-tu is his capital. Despite dire predictions, Hwan-wan makes preparations. (347) Hwan-wan and his army sets out for Szchwan. (348) After a 16 month march in which many hardships were experienced, Hwan-wan takes Li-shih by surprise at Ch'ung-tu, defeating him: He is sent to Nanking, reduced from royal rank and made vis-count, thus ending the state of Ch'eng-Han. Hwan-wan leaves a garrison at Ch'ung-tu and returns to his province where he is made duke. The palace, suspicious of Hwan-wan's new power, sends the statesman Yin-hau to watch over him: A deadly feud arises between them. Politician and scholar Wang Hi-chi (inventor of the Chinese square character) tries to have the feud ended as it is harming the country, but to no avail. (349) Death of Shih-hu of Yen. Succeeded by his son who, along with his mother, is murdered by his uncle Tsun. A relative advises Tsun to do away with the powerful general Fu-fung, who, sensing his fate, surrenders to Mu Ti. But, Fu-fung, after amassing his army in Chihli, decides to establish a dynasty of his own. (350) Tsun of Yen is killed by Kan who is killed by Shih-min. (351) Shih-min of Yen kills the members of the clan that adopted him (Shih) except for Shih-chi, and resumes his former name of Jan: He changes the name of his dynasty from [Later] Chao to [Jan-] Wei (see LL-6). Meanwhile, Fu-fung is killed by one of his officers and his son Kien becomes "king" calling his dynasty [Former] Ch'in with capital at Singanfu in Shensi (see LL-7). (355) Battle of the "Blue Field"; Hwan-wan defeats an army under the son of Kien: He pursues the defeated to the capital. While encamped, he meets and employs Wang-mung. Later, Hwan-wan suffers a disastrous defeat in which Kien's brother, who commanded, dies and is succeeded by his son Fu-kien. About this time "Great Invasion of the West"; the Hsiung-nu force their way onto the Russian plain. (356) Death of king Kien - succeeded by his son Sheng who is cruel and incompetent. Soon his ministers, fearing their lives, send for Fu-kien who, on Wang-mung's advice, kills Sheng while in a drunken fit: Fu-kien is crowned king (see LL-7); Wang-mung is prime minister. The government of Shensi is finally stable and peaceful. (361) The chief of the Sien-pi with capital at Honan, dies and is succeeded by son Wei; Mu Ti decides to attack but is dissuaded by Hwan-wan citing the superiority of Sien-pi general Muh Yang-k'o. Meanwhile, a protege of Hwan-wan named Sieh-ngan enters the court. (362) Death of Mu Ti without an heir.

L-10. Ai Ti (or Ngai: P'ei, son of Ch'ung Ti; 21 years old). Fu-kieng makes a law regarding the appointment of men to official posts: Should be good and filial sons, thoroughly educated, unable to be bribed, well versed in the laws of the state. All candidates are to be introduced by prefects and district magistrates.

L-11. Ti I (or Yih; brother). (368) Muh Yang-k'o, Yen commander, dying, advises his king to appoint Muh Yang-

shui his successor else the Ch'ins will attempt to absorb Yen. The king doesn't take this advice. (370) Hwan-wan advances upon Yen; the king of Yen asks Fu-kien for aid, it is sent and Hwan-wan is defeated; he blames his general Wantsin. Meanwhile, Muh Yang-shui, in trouble with his clan, flees with his four sons to Fu-kien and enters as a friend. Wang-mung advises his death but Fu-kien refuses and gives Muh Yang-shui a command. Meanwhile, Fu-kien demands the territory promised by the king of Yen for his aid against Hwan-wan. Yen refuses and Fu-kien sends Wang-mung - accompanied by a son of Muh Yang-shui - to take what had been promised. Wang-mung has the son dispatched through trickery in order to have Fu-kien doubt Muh Yang-shui; doesn't work. Wang-mung captures Lohyang; king Wei moves to Yeh: He sends 300,000 men against Wang-mung at Hu-kwan. (371) Battle of Hu-kwan; Wang-mung decidedly defeats Yen, chases the king into Chihli where he captures him: Fu-kien is generous; allowing him to live: Yen dynasty (see LL-5) is destroyed and its territory absorbed into Ch'in. Hwan-wan and his adviser Ch'i decide to usurp the throne: But Hwan-wan's heart fails him and so Ti I is set aside (being made Prince of the Eastern Sea) and his prime minister Yih placed on the throne:

L-12. Chien Wen Ti (or Kien). His age (50) was a calculated factor in Hwan-wan's bid for power; he forsee himself as Chien Wen Ti's successor. Other powers at court are Ch'i and Sieh-ngan, a loyalist. (372) Chien Wen Ti falls ill: He calls for Hwan-wan who is away in Kushih and doesn't return thinking if he is named the successor while away it wouldn't look suspicious. Chien names his 10 year old son Ch'ang-ki his successor with Hwan-wan regent.

L-13. Hsiao Wu Ti (or Hiau; son). Disappointed at not being named successor, Hwan-wan proceeds toward Nanking. The ministers Wang Tan-chi and Sieh-ngan (prime minister) give him a "royal" welcome. Later, Hwan-wan dies and is succeeded by his brother Hwan-ch'ang with K'ang Ti's widow regent. This year too, a Ch'in army under Fu-kien invades Szchwan capturing Han-chung and Ch'ungtu: the Ch'in ruler surrenders without a fight. (376) Wang-mung dies. (378) Now 15, Hsiao Wu Ti marries and assumes the government. Search begins for a CIC in the coming war against the Ch'ins (which Wang-mung on his death bed had warned Fu-kien not to wage): Sieh-ngan's nephew Sieh-huan is made CIC while Sieh-ngan is given rule of Kiangnan province; but his military adviser Chi dies. (382) About this time some of the Shen-si barbarians under Fu Chien are establishing rule to Karashahr and Kucha. Meanwhile, the Hsiung-nu are driving westward, unable to break the Hephthalites. (383) Fu-kien, going against the general advice of his nobles and ministers decides to make war on the Ch'in. Even his relative prince Fuyung, begs him to give it up. (384) Fuyung, followed by Fu-kien, sets out against the Ch'in. Sieh-ngan appoints his younger brother commander of advance force and allows his nephew Sieh-huan to make his own arrangements. Hwan-ch'ang desires to join Sieh-ngan but the latter tells him to return and guard his own province. Now Fuyung crosses the Yang-tze and captures Sheu-yang; Fu-kien hurries and joins him. Battle of Fei-shui; Sieh-huan crosses the Yangtze and defeats Fu-kien, routing his army. Fu-kien reaches the camp of Muh Yang-shui who talks the former into giving him the area north of Honan (against his minister's advice). Fu-kien's son P'ei, governor of Honan, gives Muh Yang-shui the region of Yen. The Sien-pi barbarians under chief Tipin prepare to invade Loyang: Fu-kien orders Muh Yang-shui's reinforcements along with those P'ei sent Fu-fei as a watch: Muh Yang-shui kills Fu-fei, joins with Tipin and prepares to conquer Honan prov (see LL-9 and 10). (385)

"Western Yen". Muh Yang-shui establishes in Chihli with the title of "Later Yen". Fu-kien is a fugitive and represented by his son P'ei at Lohyang. (387) Muh Yang-ch'ang is murdered, succeeded by his nephew who is murdered and succeeded by Muh Yang-yung who moves his capital to Lungan-fu in Shensi. Meanwhile, Yau-ch'ang murders Fu-kien, occupies Ch'angan, calls himself "emperor" and his dynasty the "Later Ts'in". Muh Yang-yung defeats P'ei in Honan, killing him and siezing his territory. P'ei's brother Futing takes the title King of the Ts'ins and makes his capital at Nan-ngan in K'iangch'ang prefect in Shensi. Topa (a Sienpi and whose predecessors from the time of Hwai Ti (311) became Duke of Tai and Min Ti (in 316) Prince of Tai) Prince of Tai, assumes the title king (N1-1. Tao Wu Ti; and changes his dynasty name to Wei; his cap is at Tai-t'ung in Shansi. (389) Death of Sieh-ngan. The conflict between Yau-ch'ang and Futing flares: The latter, insulted by the former, advances against him but the former siezes his capital and has his wife put to death. By this time Hsiao Wu Ti is allowing his dynasty to become weak; corrupt Buddhist "loyalists" are sapping the country's strength and economy. (394) Death of Yau-ch'ang; succeeded by son Yau-hing who invades Ts'in territory and possesses it. Meanwhile, Muh Yang-shui leads a Sienpi army that wipes out the Western Yen in Shensi (see LL-10). (396) The appearance of a comet casts apprehension on the activities of all Chinese. (397) Lady Chang, wife of Hsiao Wu Ti, helps in his death and his son Tuh-chung succeeds him as:

L-14. An Ti (or Ngan; 17 years old). He is totally incompetent and nearly so is his brother Tuhwun. All palace officers, including prime minister Tautze, are corrupt. Topa of Wei is expanding his power: He advances against the sienpi (Muh Yang-tuh), forcing them to flee across the Yellow River - thus ending the dynasty of Yen; he absorbs their vacated part of Chihli. Meanwhile, rise of Southern Liang, Northern Liang and Southern Yen (see LL-14, 15 and 16). (400) By this time Topa of Wei has organized an honest, well-ordered and capable government. This year he establishes libraries. Muh Yang-tuh establishes capital at Yinchow. Yuan-hien, son of prime minister Tautze, is made governor of Yang-chow district: He soon earns the hatred of his subjects: The pirate San-wen leads a revolt that first captures Hwui-che (commanded by an incompetent Taoist). The government sends Liu Lauchi against San-wen; Liu Lauchi is joined by Liu-yu of Suchow: Warfare begins; whenever San-wen is being bested, he hastens to his ships and sails off to his island retreats: Liu-yu is awarded state honors. (403) Hwan-yuan, governor of

Kingchow, rebels: Yuan-hien and Liu Lau-chi march against him, but Hwan-yuan heads for Nanking, Yuan-hien holds back and Liu Lau-chi submits and joins Hwan-yuan: They cross the Yangtze, defeat Yuan-hien and enter the capital; Tautze and Yuan-hien are killed: Hwan-yuan rules with An Ti his puppet. This year Sun-wen is defeated and killed by Sinking, governor of Linhai. (404) Hwan-yuan deposes An Ti and assumes the throne. Later Liu-yu pays his obsequies then later organizes a rebellion in the name of An Ti. He defeats Hwan-yuan's army, siezes the capital and puts the "Emperor's" family to death. Hwan-yuan flees, taking An Ti with him to Kingchow. Liu-yu defeats another of Hwan-yuan's armies; Hwan-yuan is killed by one of his own men and An Ti becomes the puppet of Liu-yu. Meanwhile, Topa of Wei issues a law on formal dress (insignia according to rank: Civilians are various birds, military are animals; there are 10 ranks). (405) The Buddhist ruler of Ts'in, Yau-hing, contributes to the spread of his religion and the establishment of monasteries and pagodas (he has Lo-shih translate Buddhist classics into Chinese) much to the consternation of the Confucians. (406) Holien Pohpoh, a Hsiung-nu, having submitted to Yau-hing, now rebels and builds a fortified town on the northern boundary of the Ts'in dominions (see LL-18). (407) Liu-yu invades Shantung province and obliterates the Later Yen (see LL-9). (416) Death of Yau-hing, succeeded by Fung; Liu-yu sends an army under Wangchin to sieze Yau-hing's holdings. This year Liu-yu is made Duke of Sung. (417) Wangchin captures Ch'angan and siezes Fung, ending the Later Ts'in dynasty (see LL-8). Liu-yu is made prince of the empire. (418) Holien Pohpoh marches down on Ch'angan; Wangchin's colleague Tientze has Wangchin killed. A son of Liu-yu kills Tientze; Holien Pohpoh siezes the city, is driven out but a few months later retakes it: He makes Ch'angan the capital of his new dynasty of Hsia (Hsia). (419) Assassins strangle An Ti (before Liu-yu was ready to) and Liu-yu places An Ti's brother Tuh-wun as: L-15. Kung Ti. (420) Liu-yu sends a command to Kung Ti to issue an edict resigning his throne in favor of Liu-yu. It is done; Liu-yu becomes emperor as:

EPOCH OF DIVISION BETWEEN NORTH AND SOUTH

M1. The SUNG DYNASTY

M1-1. Wu Ti (64 years old, also known as Kau-tsu). Wu Ti has four sons, one is heir to the throne, second (Su Chin-chi) is prime minister, third (Yiliang) is governor of Kingchow and fourth (Yi-chin) is minister of education. China at this time contains six other kingdoms: the Wei [N1], ruled by a grandson of Topa (Topatau); the Hsia [LL-18] ruled by Hsiung-nu chief Hilien Pohpoh; Northern Liang [LL-15] ruled by Mangsun; Western Liang [LL-17] ruled by Lisun; Northern Yen [LL-19] ruled by Fangpo and Western Ch'in [LL-11] ruled by chief Yau-ch'ang. Second year; Wu Ti has late emperor Kung Ti killed. Third year; Wu Ti becomes ill: He places his son in the hands of the corrupt T'an Tau-ts'i, Su Sien-chi, Puliang and Sieh-hwui. Later, he dies.

M1-2. Shao Ti (or Shau; son). The Jujan, northern barbarians, invade Wei. King Topatau (N1-3. T'ai Wu Ti) builds a wall almost 600 miles long, from P'ing-lien to Yen-ngan, stopping them for awhile. Shao Ti dismisses his valuable minister Ch'ui for ridiculing both Buddhism and Taoism as idol worshippers and charlatans. Later, the Taoist K'ow Kien-chi converts Ch'ui and he is welcomed back into court. (424) Su Chin-chi (brother of Shao Ti) has his brother Yi-chin, Minister of Education degraded. A few months later, Su Chin-chi, Pu-liang and Sieh-hwai depose Shao Ti (making him Prince of Ying-yang district in Hunan). One month later, Shao Ti and his brother Yichin are murdered: The fourth brother Yiliang is raised to the throne as:

M1-3. Wen Ti (17 years old): Disliking and distrusting his ministers, he bides his time. His prime minister is Tau-ts'i. (427) Wen Ti calls his "benefactors" to him for an accounting: Knowing their fate, Puliang flees and is executed; Su Chin-chi commits suicide; Sieh-hwui decides to attack but Tau-ts'i is ready and Sieh-hwui's army is defeated and he is slain. This year too, Wen Ti saves his just born but very ugly (an omen) son from strangulation. Also, Topatau leads an army against the Hsia dynasty. (428) To-patau captures T'ungman and conquers Panchow district in Shansi. Later Topatau marches against the Western Ts'ins; he captures King Ch'ang and places his brother Ting in his place. Later, To-patau is defeated and Ch'ang-an is once again Ts'in. (431) Wen Ti prepares to bring Honan province back into the empire: The army is led by Tau Yenchi. Wen Ti first informs Wei that years ago Honan was forcibly taken and peace could reign if it belonged to the Sung. Topatau says no, so preparations continue; Honan is entered and Wei's armies retreat; military leader Wang Chung-tuh is anxious and forbodes disaster, not trusting the men of Wei. Meanwhile, Fangpo, King of Northern Yen, dies and is succeeded by his brother Fung who killed Fangpo's son. (Winter) The Yangtze freezes over and Topa-tau sends general Ngan-ch'ieh to reconquer Honan: They recapture two cities and Tau Yenchi retreats. Wen Ti sends Tau-ts'i to turn things around. He fails, and it is only by a ruse that Tau-ts'i is able to rescue the Sung army without it being a rout. (435) Northern Yen becomes a dependency of Wei as King Fung gives Topatau his very beautiful daughter. (437) Wen Ti falls ill; on the advice of his brother Yi-k'ung, he has Tau-ts'i killed as a possible threat to imperial power: The court of Wei is delighted at this news. Later, Topatau absorbs Later Yen [see LL-19]; king Fung flees to Korea. (439) Wen Ti establishes four Royal Colleges in which Confucian literature and all its branches are studied. To one of the colleges the scholar Lei is appointed president. The empire is prospering, for Wen Ti takes no tax except the land tax. This year Topatau ends the Northern Liang dynasty [see LL-15] and is copying Wen Ti in his establishment of colleges: He appoints the scholar Ts'ui-ho the royal historian. (441) Wen Ti's brother Yi-k'ung's arrogance in the palace

causes the emperor to have him removed as governor of Kiangsi prov. (446) Following the prophesies of a charlatan "seer", Yi-k'ung leads a rebellion, is defeated, his followers slain; he is stripped of all titles and made a commoner. (447) Wen Ti decides to punish Cochin China (a tributary of the Empire) for the harassment of coastal peoples by pirates from there. The Sung army is led by Hocht with Tsung-ch'ueh as second: Upon meeting with the Cochin Chinese it flees before the latter's elephants, heretofore unseen by China. Tsung-ch'ueh, to prevent disaster, has images of tigers made, and with these in the lead the elephants are routed; Cochin-China is overrun, the king flees and the capital occupied; much booty is taken north. This year, Topatau expels Buddhists from Wei, having discovered much licentiousness within the monasteries: All idols are burned, as are Buddhist classics and every temple is soon razed. (451) Two enemies of historian Ts'ui-ho (who had instigated Topatau's expulsion of the Buddhists) trick him into publishing Wei's history up to now (traditionally only done at a dynastic change); for this he and his family are disgraced and killed. This year too, Wen Ti again sends an army to conquer Honan province; the army is led by Wang-yuan. The Sung are defeated by Topatau and the Wei army devastates six provinces of Sung so completely that a wilderness is left. (452) Having devastated the land, the army of Wei, hungry, retreats back to Wei. (453) Chung-ngai and conspirators murder Topatau: Fearing the true heir, they place Prince of Nangan on the throne. Few months later Chung-ngai kills him: The kingdoms chief men kill Chung-ngai and all his family and place the legitimate heir, Chun, on the throne as N1-4. Wen Ch'eng Ti (or ch'ung). His first act is to restore Buddhism in the country of Wei. (454) Wen Ti's sons Shau and Chun murder their father and all his ministers. Tsun, Wen Ti's third son and governor of Kiangsi, marches into Nanking, kills Shau and Chun and becomes emperor:

M1-4. Hsiao Wu Ti (or Hiau). He is 24 years old and given over to frivolity and play. (460) Tan, fourth son of Wen Ti, conspires with the official Yen-chun against Hsiao Wu Ti but the plot is discovered and the conspirators killed. (465) Hsiao Wu Ti is succeeded by his son Yeh as:

M1-5. Fei Ti. Fei Ti imprisons his three uncles. Warned of his ordered death, Hien Wen Ti's brother Chu raises a rebellion. Meanwhile, one of the imprisoned uncles Hwo, plans with palace eunuchs to overthrow Fei Ti; he waits the opportunity. Soon it arises and Fei Ti is killed; a suitable excuse is proclaimed and Hwo ascends the throne as:

M1-6. Ming Ti (27 years old). The rebellious Chu takes the title Emperor. Ming Ti takes his minister Ts'ai-hing's advice and issues an edict declaring the relatives of those in rebellion will not suffer the usual penalties but be held guiltless of the treason of their friends. Many of Chu's followers desert him. (466) [Topa Fung becomes king of Wei as N1-5. Hsien Wen Ti] A royal army defeats Chu's army; the rebel is slain. two provincial governors, Sieh-ngan and Siang-tih send word they'll surrender and become faithful subjects. Against Ts'ai-hing's advice, Ming Ti sends an army against them: Sieh-ngan submits to the king of Wei; the allies defeat the royal army and all Sung territory north of the River Hwai becomes part of Wei. (468) Siau-tau, a descendant of Siau-ho, enters the Sung court. Impressed, Ming Ti makes him a military commander. (470) Alarmed at the growing reputation of Siau-tau, Ming Ti calls him to the capital: Seeing the superior's intent, Siau-tau tricks some soldiers of Wei into entering Sung territory; Siau-tau informs Ming Ti of this "danger" and is told to stay at his post. (471) Ming Ti kills four of his sons as he wishes his heir to be his adopted son. He calls Siau-tau to the capital; he goes. Topa Fung (Hsien Wen Ti), King of Wei, resigns his throne to his five year old son (N1-6. Hsiao Wen Ti) and immerses himself in Buddhist and Taoist studies. Ming Ti builds a lavish Buddhist temple and is remonstrated by his ministers for the money spent on it that impoverished many of his subjects. (473) Death of Ming Ti; succeeded by his son Tze as:

M1-7. Ts'ang-wu Wang (also, Fei Ti; also Chu Li) (477) He is killed by Siau-tau and the Prince of Ngan-ch'ung; third son of Ming Ti succeeds him as:

M1-8. Shun Ti. An insurrection arises in kingchow; the governor demands Siau-tau's life for the murder of Ts'ang Wu-wang. Siau-tau kills two sympathetic Sung ministers and marches into Kingchow. He defeats the governor who dies. Siau-tau now acts like a sovereign. (479) Siau-tau forces Shun Ti to resign, the deposed emperor is made Prince of Juyin in Kiangnan. Siau-tau becomes emperor as:

M2. The CH'I (T'si) DYNASTY

M2-1. Kao Ti (or Kau; 50 years old). He is an accomplished scholar; he studies the interests of his people and desires to see them prosper.

M2-2. Wu Ti (son). He passes a law prohibiting marriage of two people of the same family name. During Wu Ti's reign, great progress is made by the Buddhist church, one reason being that Wu Ti's oldest son Tze-liang is a devoted adherent who collects the most devoted [bonyes?] and having them expound their doctrine to him. (485) Wu Ti passes a law stating that no prince of the blood should have more than 40 attendants. (488) Hiau Wen Ti of Wei, concerned over the great number of robbers within his kingdom, consults with his officers as to how to rid the kingdom of them. They suggest follow the example of Sung-kun (at first an officer under Ma-yuan (general under Kwang Wu Ti) then governor of Kiukiang, Nganhwei province): He does, first by beginning to clean up the government. He opens schools throughout the kingdom and encourages education. (494) Hiau Wen Ti of Wei desires to move his capital from P'ing in Shansi to Lohyang in Honen. Knowing his ministers will object, he uses a ruse; he announces war on the Ts'i. Hearing of the preparations of Wei, Ts'i amasses its army, the Wei army is rained out near Lohyang and no battles are fought but Hiau Wen Ti sees his desire carried as the nearness of Ts'i

troops to Wei sail is better met with the capital at Lohyang. Meanwhile (493), Wu Ti dies. His grandson Ch'iau-yeh is made emperor as

M2-3 Yu Lin Wang. He is soon murdered by Siau-lun (nephew of Siau-tau) who takes the title of Prince. Yu-lin Wang's brother Liang is made emperor as

M2-4 Hai-ling Wang. Siau-lun soon murders him and becomes emperor as

M2-5 Ming Ti (35). He makes Wang-king, governor of Hwaychi, Chehkiang, CIC (who secretly desires the restoration of the Sung). (494) Hiau Wen Ti of Wei issues an edict commanding his people to adopt the dress (Chinese) of their neighbors, the Ts'i, and abandon their own. (495) Wei armies led by Hiau Wen Ti invade Ts'i on the pretext of Ming Ti's abominable behavior - re; the murder of the last two emperors: He is defeated and returns to Lohyang. He now orders the adoption of the Chinese language and abandonment of the language of Wei, that it be taught in all the schools and that classical Chinese works be collected into a great library. (496) Lohyang officially becomes capital of Wei. (497) Hiau Wen Ti of Wei changes his dynasty's name from Wei to Yuan (since he is a descendant of Hwang Ti). (498) Ming Ti begins to have suspicions about his CIC Wang-king. Soon he has a high official sent with Wang-king's son to watch the commander. (499) Wang-king does not like this and rebels. Wang-king's son-in-law spills the beans to Ming Ti. Wang-king captures Hangchow but is defeated and killed by royal troops commanded by Siau-i. Ming Ti dies and is succeeded by his son Pau-kwan as

M2-6 Tung Hwun Hau (Tung Hun Hou). He is of a light and frivolous disposition. An army is sent out against Wei. (500) Death of Hiau Wen Ti; he is succeeded by his son N1-7 Hsuan Wu Ti; He manages to defeat the armies of Ts'i, compelling them to retreat. This year too, the palace at Nanking burns; Tung Hwun Hau commences the construction of a new one so lavish that the exactions from the populace to pay for it bears heavily (this is the era of the beautiful concubine Pan-fei from whom, it is theorized, originated the artificial cramping of women's feet - see 970). Such is the burden that Siau-i is asked to kill the emperor, he refuses, but is accused of assenting to Tung who has him killed: Siau-yen quietly gathers an army. Tung orders his brother Pau-fung, governor of Kingchow, to stop Siau-yen, but the latter convinces Pau-fung to join him against Tung. (501) Pau-fung assumes the royal title as M2-7 Ho Ti (16 years old). Siau-yen marches on Nanking and finds that the people have killed Tung. On the advice of his ministers, he has Pan-fei killed. Ignoring Ho Ti, Siau-yen assumes the royal title as

M3. The LIANG DYNASTY

M3-1 Wu Ti. Wary of popular reaction to a new dynasty, Siau-yen first takes the title prime minister to Ho Ti. Then proclaims himself Duke of Liang, accepted, then Prince of Liang. Meanwhile, Ho Ti is advancing on Nanking and finds out about Siau-yen at Ku-shu. Ho Ti resigns in favor of Siau-yen who makes Ho Ti prince of Pa-ling, but, unable to find a suitable place of residence, has him killed. Wu Ti desires to rule wisely and fairly and with justice: He has two large wooden boxes placed in a public place near the palace in which anyone can place a complaint to be brought before the emperor. (503) A terrible famine hits Shensi province in kingdom of Wei. Wu Ti sends special officers to direct an aid project. (505) About this time both rulers of Wei and Liang become absorbed in fostering and caring for Confucianism: Schools are opened. Wu Ti spends money to build temples. (508) Suan Wu Ti sends an army under two of his best generals to capture Tsung-li, in Kiangnan; they do by crossing the river with a bridge they build. Wu Ti sends an army under general Wei-jui: Battle of Tsung-li; Wei-jui burns the bridge cutting off Wei's retreat and defeats them: Wei-jui pursues them to the borders of Wei. (510) Wu Ti attempts to conclude a peace with Wei but the effort is repulsed. About this time too, Wu Ti abandons Confucianism for Buddhism, becoming in fact a preacher. The religion begins to spread throughout the empire. (513) Fu, son of Suan Wu Ti, is declared heir to the throne of Wei. (516) Death of Suan Wu Ti; Fu becomes king of Wei as N1-8 Hiau Ming Ti. He puts to death his father's widow and elevates his wife Hu-shih, a former concubine, to Queen. Taking advantage of the new king, Wu Ti sends an expedition to capture the town of Shenyang on the river Hwai by damming up the river and flooding it out. (518) The dam is finished and just before the inhabitants are forced to flee, the dam breaks wiping out much of Wu Ti's army. (520) By this time both Wu Ti and Queen Hu-shih of Wei have become absorbed in their devotion to Buddhism. She has built a magnificent temple open for worship 24 hours a day and a 90 foot high pagoda. Wu Ti has issued a decree about life that severely restricts the Confucians in their worship creating much dissatisfaction. (523) Queen Hu-shih of Wei is confined to her apartment by her brother-in-law, shocked at her avarice, immorality, ambition and profligacy. (525) The general of the borders (to keep out the barbarians) Ur-chu-ying, disappointed by the misgovernment of Wei, plans to seize power. (526) By an intrigue, Queen Hu-shih gains her freedom and resumes her old corrupt ways; rebellions break out, the most serious in Chihli for which she imposes some new disliked taxes to finance its suppression. (528) Wu Ti retires from his palace to become a common [gonye?] in the monastery of "Harmonious Peace". Meanwhile, general Ur-chu-ying, joined by the famous Kau-hwan, informs Hiau Ming Ti that he is going to rescue him from the corrupt government of his mother (529) At first Hiau Ming Ti welcomes this, then fearing his mother, tells the general to forget it - Ur-chu-ying is on his way to Lohyang already Hu-shih finds out about the correspondence and has Hiau Ming Ti killed, elevating the three year old Prince N1-9 Lin-T'ao Wang to the throne. Ur-chu-ying defeats the Queen's army, drowns her and Prince Lin-tau; kills her corrupt ministers and makes the Prince of Chu-yen king of Wei as N1-10 Hiau Chwang Ti. Meanwhile, a prince of Wei flees and seeks aid from Wu Ti, who sends general Ch'en King-chi who easily takes

Lohyang (Hiau Chwang Ti flees) and places the prince on the throne and Ch'en becomes prime minister. A month later Ur-chu-ying routes Ch'en's forces, slays the prince and restores Hiau Chwang Ti: Ur-chu-ying is CIC and Kau-hwan is political advisor. Meanwhile, Wu Ti again enters the monastery of "Harmonious Peace". (530) Hiau Chwang Ti has general Ur-chu-ying killed. Ur-chu-shih-liang, the general's cousin, flees to Ho-yin and raises a rebellion claiming Prince Tung Hai as ruler of Wei. He marches on Lohyang, slays Hiau Chwang Ti placing Prince N1-11 Tung-Hai Wang on the throne: Kau-hwan is given command of a large district. (531) Prince Tung Hai is superceded by N1-12 Chieh Min Ti, who is displaced by Kau-hwan who puts prince N1-13 An Ting Wang on the throne. A few months later (532) he places N1-14 Hsiao Wu Ti on the throne and forces him to marry one of his daughters. (534) Ho-pa, governor of Shensi and annoyed at the power of Kau-hwan, informs Hiau Wu Ti that he is going to kill him. Hiau Wu Ti, rejoicing, gives Ho-pa the command of 20 districts (the eastern half of Wei kingdom). Collecting his forces, however, Ho-pa is killed and his power falls to general Yu Wen-t'ai. (535) Kau-hwan rebels and Hiau Wu Ti flees to Shansi; Kau-hwan puts Hiau Tsing Ti on the throne and himself as prime minister. Yu Wen-t'ai poisons Hiau Wu Ti and places Wen Ti of Shensi on the throne; thus the kingdom of Wei is divided: N3-1 Wen Ti is king of Western Wei, N2 Hsiao Ching Ti of Eastern Wei: Warfare between the two is endemic. (538) Wu Ti receives some nails, hair and bones of Buddha and so builds a magnificent temple for them and proclaims an amnesty throughout the empire. His government is slowly deteriorating. (547) Kau-hwan besieges the Western Wei city of Yupi. (548) The siege is unsuccessful and Kau-hwan dies after warning his son against the commander Heu-king, who, hearing of the death passes over into the service of Western Wei, but, unsatisfied with his position there, offers his services to Wu Ti and promises to conquer Honan for him. Against his ministers wishes (except one Chu-i who Wu Ti makes prince of Honan) Wu Ti accepts Heu-king's offer: He again enters the monastery of "Harmonian Peace". Meanwhile, Hiau Ching of Eastern Wei is killed by the minister Kau-ting. (549) Soldiers of Liang and Heu-king invade Eastern Wei; Niu-yang is appointed commander of Eastern Wei's forces: He defeats and routes the allied army. Heu-king is disgraced but Wu Ti makes him governor of a district in Kiangnan. Now Kau-ting proposes peace with Wu Ti and against his ministers advice, Wu Ti agrees. Heu-king, fearful of Wu Ti's ability, finds an ally in Ching-tuh, Duke of Lin-ho, Kwangsi prov (and ex-appointed heir of Wu Ti) and they raise a rebellion. They defeat Wu Ti's forces and invest Nanking: Ching-tuh is proclaimed emperor, Heu-king prime minister (who marries the emperor's daughter). (550) The besiegers take Nanking. Ching-tuh is humbled before Wu Ti. Hei-king imprisons Wu Ti in his quarters. Later, Ching-tuh is put to death. To prevent his downfall, at Wu Ti's death, Heu-king raises the third son of Wu Ti to emperor as M3-2 Kien Wen Ti (Chien Wen Ti) Kau-ting of E'n Wei in a campaign in Hwan captures two generals and makes them household servants. (551) One of them kills Kau-ting and is killed by Kau-ting's brother Kauyang who sets aside Hsiao Ching Ti, assumes the title N4-1 Wen Hsuan Ti and changes the dynastic title to Northern Ch'i (Ts'i). Meanwhile, various rebellions against Heu-king are brewing; the commander of imperial troops in Kwang-si, Canton and Ch'a, grandson of Wu Ti who enlists the aid of Yu Wen-t'ai, PRIME MINISTER of W'n Wei. Soon Heu-king deposes and murders Chien Wen Ti and his son and places Prince Yu Chang as M3-3 Yu Chang Wang, Yih, seventh son of Wu Ti, supported by commander Ch'en Pa-sien, marches ag ainst Heu-king. (552) Heu-king is defeated; he flees to Soochow, is captured and killed. Yih ascends the throne as M3-4 Yuan Ti. He estabs his capital at Kiangling in Kingchow. Religious, he is a Taoist and is involved in its study. (555) Forces of W'n Wei under Siau-ch'a and prime minister Yu Wen-t'ai march on Kiangling, cross the river Han, defeat imperial forces and capture Yuan Ti. One month later Yu Wen-t'ai orders the death of Yuan Ti and Siau-ch'a is appointed emperor as Suan Ti of the Later Liang dynasty Ch'en Pa-sien refuses to accept this and places Yuan Ti's ninth son on the throne as King (Ching) Ti. Wen Suan To of Northern Ch'i, claiming authority to determine the sovereign of Liang, marches to Nanking and places King Ti's uncle on the throne as M3-5 Cheng Yang Hou. King Ti is demoted to heir. Ch'en Pa-sien deposes Cheng Yang Hou and reinstates M3-6 Ching (King) Ti. Ch'en Pa-sien becomes CIC. Meanwhile, Wen Suan Ti of Northern Ch'i under takes construction of a wall from Chihli to Shansi to protect himself from the growing power of Northern Chow. (556) While the wall is building, Wen Suan Ti decides that Confucianism and Buddhism are meaningless and makes his country's religion Taoism. Yu Wen-t'ai leads the troops of W'n Wei to Ch'ang-ngan, captures the city and places its citizens in great suffering. He is convinced to release those innocent captives by Yu-kwei. (557) Death of Yu Wen-t'ai who is succeeded by his son Chiau (14 years old) overseen by nephew Yu Wen-hau. Seeing the drift of things, King Ti resigns his throne to Ch'en Pa-sien, becoming Duke of Kiangyin, ending the Liang Dynasty and begining the Ch'en. Ch'en Pa-sien is

M4; CH'EN DYNASTY

M4-1 Wu Ti, He soon has King Ti murdered. Chiau, son of Yu Wen-t'ai deposes Kung Ti of Western Wei, assumes the throne as N5-1 Hsiao Min Ti of the new dynasty of Northern Chow. Soon Yu Wen-hau has Hiau Min Ti killed along with Kung Ti and appoints a brother of Hiau Wen king of Northern Chow as N5-2 Ming Ti (560) Wen Suan Ti, ruler of Northern Ts'i, to preclude any trouble from the house of Topa when his son succeeds him, has 721 of Topa's descendant's killed. A few months later he falls ill and places his son N4-2 Fei Ti in hands of his brother Yeu-yang and a trusted minister and dies. In a few months, Yeu-yang has Fei Ti killed and assumes the throne as

N4-3 Hsiao Chao Ti. He soon dies in a horse fall and is succeeded (561) by his brother as N4-4 Wu Ch'eng Ti; he makes Hiau Chau Ti's son the Prince of Lok-ling. Meanwhile (560) Wu Ti dies and is succeeded by his nephew because his two sons are still held captive in Ch'ang-ngan by Yu Wen-hau of Chow:

M4-2 Wen Ti. Yu Wen-hau releases Wu Ti's eldest son who now marches toward the Ch'en capital to claim his inheritance. Wen Ti sends orders out to have the son killed, which is done, avoiding a civil war. (561) Yu Wen-hau has Ming Ti poisoned and places Ming Ti's brother on Chow's throne as N5-3 Wu Ti, he is a distinguished scholar and attends a school in which he learns about proper governing: Keeping the faith, caring for his people and maintaining an army with good spirits (562) Wu Ti's second son returns to the capital, gaining the favor of Wen Ti, is made a prince of the empire. (563) Wu Ch'eng Ti of Northern Ts'i has the son of Hiau Chau Ti murdered (565/6) The appearance of a comet scares Wu Ch'eng Ti who, upon the advice of his similarly scared ministers, resigns the throne to his son Wen King as N4-5 Hou Chu. (567) Wen Ti becomes ill and, knowing his son to be incapable, calls the Prince of Ngan-cheng, second son of Wu Ti so succeed; he refuses.

M4-3 Hwei Ti (Lin-Hai Wang)(son) The Prince of Ngan-cheng is prime minister. (569) prime minister Ngan-cheng deposes Hwei Ti, giving him the title of Lin Hai Wang, and ascends the throne as

M4-4 Hsuan Ti. (573) Wu Ti (of N'n Chow) has Yu Wen-hau put to death, demonstrating his desire to maintain a competent government. (575) Wu Ti forbids the exercise of the Taoist and Buddhist faiths commanding all his subjects to adopt Confucianism - this in line with Wu Ti's disbelief in superstition: He also commands the destruction of their temples. By this time Hou Chu of Northern Ch'i has been going more insane. (576) Hou Chu sends an army against Northern Chow and it siezes P'ing-yang, but soon the forces of Northern Chow retake it and rout the T'si army and head for Loh-yang; Hou Chu flees to Yeh: The people of Lohyang appoint N4-6 Ngan-teh (An-Teh Wang) their sovereign. (577) Wu Ti's (N5-3) armies sieze Nganteh and Lohyang. Wen Kung resigns in favor of his son N4-7 Yiu (Yu) Chu; Wu Ti marches on Yeh, captures the city, executes Wen Kung and Yiu Chu and adds the territory of Northern Ts'i to that of Northern Chow, ending the Northern Ts'i dynasty Death of Wu Ti, succeeded (578) by his son Pin as N5-4 Suan (Hsuan) Ti. His first act is to have his uncle killed for possessing excessive power. (579) Suan Ti appoints Yang-kien CIC. (580) Yang-kien resigns; his son Tsing Ti becomes CIC. (581) Suan Ti marries a daughter of Yang-kien who is made prime minister and Duke of Sui - much to Suan Ti's regret he soon discovers, for Yang-kien is ambitious and vows to extinguish the house of Yang. Later, Suan Ti dies (murdered?) and his son N5-5 Tsing (Ching) Ti, but a baby, is overshadowed by Yang-kien: He eliminates much of the harshness in the criminal laws and allows the restoration of Taoism and Buddhism. (582) Yang-kien has Tsing Ti sent to a distant part of the kingdom and made Duke of Chieh; every other member of Suan Ti's family is put to death. This year the famous scholar Su-wei has a great influence on Yang-kien: The land tax is reduced and the ruler is urged to study the Confucian "Filial Classic". This year too, Yang-kien, with advice from the famous scholar Kau-king, prepares to march against the Ch'en: An army under Han-ch'in camps at Kwangling and Luchow and another under Ho Joh-pi camps at Yangchow Yang-kien has his seven year old grandson put to death and adopts yellow as the royal color. (583) Death of Suan Ti; succeeded by his son Shuh-pau as

M4-5 How (Hou) Chu. Extravagant and given over to debauchery, he leaves the government of Ch'en to his ministers while he cavorts with his favorite concubine Chang Li-hwa and her two companions K'ung Kwei-fei and Kung Kwei-fei: For them How Chu has a magnificent trio of buildings constructed. Meanwhile, Yang-kien under Kau-yang's advice, begins sending small raiding parties into Ch'en territory. (589) Yang-kien sends his army of 518,000 commanded by his son Kung over the Yang-tze and on to Nanking. No preparations are made to oppose him, the Ch'en capital is taken and the Ch'en dy-nasty ends. Yang-kien becomes ruler over the Sui as

O. The SUI DYNASTY

O-1 Kau Tsu (or Wun (Wen) Ti), 40 years old. Chang Li-hwa is killed; How Chu is carried off to Shensi. General Han-ch'in is given the title "Supreme Pillar of the Kingdom"; General Ho Joh-pi is made Duke of Sung; Kau-king is made Duke of Ts'i and Yang-su Duke of Yueh. Ambassadors come from the wild tribes of Turcomen outside the empire and are awed by the power of the Sui. Peace lies across China. Kau Tsu sets about reorganizing his Government and economy. His example is followed by many of his subordinates; governor Sin-kung of Minchow in Shensi is an example. (593) A rumor spreads that Kau Tsu is going to move populations to prevent rebellion against the teaching of Confucianism in the schools: Risings occur in Chehkiang and Soochow which are put down by Yang-su, Duke of Yueh. Death of Han-ch'ing; Kau-king and Yang-su are made prime ministers. Jealous, Ho Joh-pi vents his anger to Kau Tsu who demotes him Unceasing, Kau Tsu is forced to imprison the general. Con-demned to death, Ho Joh-pi pleads his case and is restored to his position and rights. (595) Famine in Shensi is only relieved by migrating the people into Honan prov. (596) Kau Tsu goes atop Mount T'ai-shan (one of the five great mountains of China upon which kings confess their sins: T'ai-shan in Shantung; Heng in Hunan; Hoa in Shensi; Hang in Shensi and Sung in Honan) and confesses his sins as payment for the famine in Shensi. The people later leave Honan and return to Shensi. This year too, Yang-su completes the magnificent palace of "Longlived Benevalence", loved by the Queen but built at the expense of many worker's lives. (600) About this time popular pressure upon the Board of Punishment from a rising crime rate throughout the empire causes Kau Tsu's lenient criminal laws to be dropped without comment. (601) Death of the wife of Yung, Kau Tsu's eldest son and heir to the throne. Yung appoints one

of his concubines his wife. Kau Tsu's wife accuses Yung of murder; Kau Tsu degrades Yung and raises his second son Kwang as heir. An earthquake rocks the country. The Turkomen and other barbarians begin raiding China's frontiers: They are defeated by general Shih-man but his rewards are denied by jealous general Yang-su; Shih-man complains and Kau Tsu orders his death. (602) Kau Tsu orders the closing of all district, prefectural and departmental schools except the Imperial College for two reasons; (1) "Flowery" writing is a waste of time and (2) too much tax money going for education (603) Kau Tsu's third son, a prince in Szchwan, is accused of treason, stripped of all privileges and reduced to commoner status. Later, Kau Tsu's wife dies and he elevates the beautiful Suan-hoa as queen. (605) Kau Tsu takes ill. Son Kwang hovers about to make sure he succeeds; Kau Tsu, angered by this, sends for son Yung but Kwang stops the message, has Kau Tsu killed and becomes emperor as O-2 Yang Ti ("The Shady"). He orders Yung killed. Suan-hoa refuses to join his seraglio. He moves the capital from Ch'ang-ngan to Loh-yang and entrusts Yang-su with construction of a magnificent palace, employing an immense number of workers. He also orders the laying out of an immense and lavish garden within which is a lake five miles wide. He orders minister Hong-yu to construct a system of canals by which he could tour the kingdom: From the river Pien to river Sz, from river Sz to river Hwai, widen existing canal at Han. (606) Yang Ti makes a journey in his canals that is extremely lavish and denudes the countryside along the canals of birds with pretty feathers; used for decorating the barges and his concubines. (607) The royal tour returns to Lohyang. Tang Ti issues an edict announcing examinations would be held in Lohyang for the new degree of Tsin-sze (similar to a DCL or LLD; There are other degrees; the Sew-tsai (established in 618; similar to BA); the Ku-jin (established in 828; similar to MA); and the highest being a member of the Imperial Academy). This year too, Yang Ti, foretold by the royal astronomer that a great man will die in the state of Ch'u, appoints Yang-su (of whom his suspicions have been gaining) Duke of Ch'u and he soon dies of illness. Plans for a great festivity honoring the visit of Ch'i-ming, chief of the Turkmens are made and carried out. Meanwhile, Yang Ti orders the construction of two huge granaries, one north of Lohyang and the other at Kung, to avert famine and feed armies. (608) Yang Ti visits Ch'i-ming and wishes closer relations with the barbarians, has a superintendent of trade appointed. Great lavish visits are made by barbarian "ministers" and Yang Ti has a minister beheaded for stating that such intimacy only shows the barbarians China's weak points. On one visit to Ch'i-ming, Yang Ti observes some Koreans. Later, knowing that Korea was tributary to the Ts'in and Han dynasties, sends ambassadors to Korea demanding the resumption of tribute. (612) With no tribute coming from Korea, Yang Ti sends an army under Yu-wen to invade Korea. The immense preparations for the campaign rests severely on the people and rebellion becomes freely discussed: Tow-kien leads a 10,000 man rebellion in Chihli (613; July) The army of 305,000 crosses the river Liau and invests the cap of Liau-tung (modern Shing-king). (Aug) Failing that; Battle of the Yalu; the Koreans defeat Yang Ti's army. Upon his return to Lohyang, Yang Ti orders the death of the mandarin that equipped the army and all officers reduced in ranks. Next he has Chang-heng (who he had employed to murder his father) killed. (614) Yang Ti appoints grandson Yew, Prince of Tai, the command of Shensi; and grandson T'ung, Prince of Yueh, is put in charge of Lohyang. (April) Against the advice of his ministers, Yang Ti heads another army against Korea. Huan-kan, son of Yang-su and angry at Yang Ti's treatment of his father, with scholar Li-mi and taking advantage of the tide of rebellion in China plots to overthrow the government. Against the advice of Li-mi, Huan-kan marches on Lohyang and besieges it. Tang Ti marches an army over there, defeats the rebels putting them to death and massacres thousands of civilian sympathisers. Later, Yang Ti sends for Li-yuan, governor of a province of Shansi, for, being suspicious of him, he desires his death. Li-yuan falls ill and cannot make it. Li-yuan's nephew spreads rumors of his uncle's loyalty and Yang Ti is happy. (615) Yang Ti sends another expedition against Korea but this time the country submits and becomes tributary. The emperor now makes a journey, at great public expense, to Shensi, visiting with Li-yuan. (616) With the death of Ch'i-ming, his son Si-pi is now chief of the Turkmens: Knowing of Yang Ti's nearness to his borders, he invades China, forces Yang Ti to flee to Yen-mun, T'ai-yuan prefect, and besieges the city. Soon they retreat. (Autumn) Yang Ti returns to Lohyang and orders preparations for a tour to Nanking; he has two ministers who advise against this killed. (617; August) Yang Ti's tour begins. Meanwhile, encouraged by his son Shih-min and promised the support of Si-pi (who already has appointed Liu-wu khan or chief of the adjacent part of Shensi), Li-yuan proclaims a rebellion to redress the wrongs of Yang Ti; he appoints grandson Yew, Prince of Tai, emperor as O3 King Ti Yew (Yu). He dislikes the rebels, garrisons the towns of Hwo and Ho-tung. But the rebels are victorious, siezing the town and city one after another and finally Ch'ang-ngan itself where Yew is taken prisoner and proclaimed emperor. Li-yuan treats the populace with much kindness and fairness. Li-mi, in confederation with Li-yuan, besieges T'ung, grandson of Yang Ti, within Lohyang. (618) General Yu Wen-hwa and a band of followers strangle Yang Ti. T'ung, in besieged Lohyang, assumes the throne as O4 Kung Ti T'ung, but is soon murdered. Meanwhile, Yew resigns his crown in favor of Li-yuan who becomes emperor as

P. The T'ANG DYNASTY

P1 Kau (Kao) Tsu. His wife is Taw, the beautiful daughter of Tow-i, a man of importance in the last dynasty. Kau Tsu has four sons by her; Kien-ch'eng (who is made heir to the throne), Shih-min, Huan-pa and Yuan-kieh. His first

act is to rescind Kau Tsu's (of Sui) order abolishing the schools; education once more thrives. Kau Tsu establishes the degree of Sew-tsai (see 607) obtained by examinations given every three years. (619) With Li-yuan holds Shansi and Li-mi and T'ung holding Honan, Yu Wen-hwa, murderer of Yang Ti, desiring the throne, marches against Li-mi. Defeated, Li-mi submits to T'ung but sees danger there and flees to Kau Tsu, who makes him a duke (Li-mi brings a district in Shantung to royal control). (620) Li-mi, regretting his submission to Kau Tsu asks to go to Shantung, the ministers oppose this fearing rebellion but Shih-min lets him go: Upon arrival he raises a rebellion but is slain along with his followers by the royal army. (621) With T'ung set aside by the minister Wang-shih, Kau Tsu undertakes the conquest of Honan. Finally Wang-shih has T'ung killed and he proclaims himself emperor of a new dynasty. (622) Kau Tsu sends Shih-min against Wang-shih, he is victorious (aided by the intelligence and strength of one Yu Chih-kung). Battle of Ku-shuy; Wang-shih is defeated. Loh-yang stormed; T'ung and Tow-kien captured, sent to Ch'ang-ngan and killed. (623) Kau Tsu issues an edict of taxation upon all men who are of age (16 years old) and older. He also reforms the currency that had suffered terribly at the hands of the Sui dynasty; each coin would be copper and weigh 1/10 oz. Meanwhile, Shih-min brings Nanking and its region and Kweichow into the royal sphere. Now he begins devoting more of his time to his favorite pursuit, literature, and has a building constructed for the gathering of scholars. Meanwhile, Kien-ch'eng and Yuan-chieh are trying to undermine Kau Tsu's love of Shih-min. (625) The Turkomens under chief Chieh-li invade Shensi; Kau Tsu is advised to stop these incursions by moving the capital to Honan and razing Ch'ang-ngan. Shih-min promises that with an army and a few years he will bring Chieh-li's head back - but his brothers convince Kau Tsu that he plans rebellion. Kau Tsu says no and concludes a peace with the invaders. (626) Kau Tsu issues an edict allowing his people to worship Heaven and Earth and to erect altars to do so (a privilege, for heretofore only the ruler did these things). He also issues orders to clean up the Buddhist temples (influenced by unproductive ideas from the West) and return many of Buddhism's lazy adherents to the mainstream of life. (627) the two brothers try to kill Shih-min. Soon his opportunity comes and Shih-min has them slain. Alarmed, Kau Tsu is advised that since Shih-min regained the empire for him, he should rightly be the heir. Kau Tsu agrees and a few months later cedes the throne to Shih-min who becomes emperor as P2 T'ai Tsung ("The Great"). His queen is the talented and intelligent Ch'ang-sun. First act is to have the sons of his brother killed. Next he dismisses 3,000 ladies of the palace to their homes as they are a useless expense upon the state. (628) At the invitation of Liang-sze, one of the last dynasty's rebels, the Turkomens under Chieh-li and Tu-li invade and camp on the river Wei. They send an envoy to T'ai Tsung demanding conditions. T'ai Tsung imprisons the envoy, marches to river Wei and there upbraids the Turkomens for violating past peace treaties. The barbarian chiefs, seeing T'ai Tsung's large army come to terms on the bridge Pien and recede. T'ai Tsung now undertakes the task of forging a super army and by his demeanor becomes much loved throughout the country. He builds an immense library by the palace with rooms for discussion with scholars among which T'ai Tsung's brilliant counselor Wei-cheng takes part. T'ai Tsung becomes an adherent of Confucianism. (629) By this time T'ai Tsung has restored domestic tranquility and greatly reduced the crime rate by reducing the harshness of the laws, lowering taxes and assuaging basic wants among the populace. This year the empire is divided into 10 circuits or provinces: Kwan-wei, Ho-tang, Ho-nan, Ho-peh, Shan-nan, Lung-yu, Hwai-nan, Kiang-nan, Chien-nan and Ling-nan. Also, a severe winter strikes the 15 tribes of the Turkomens and the people rise up against Chieh-li. It is advised that T'ai Tsung attack them now but he says no, the time is not right and their treaties are still good. Soon, drought and locusts strike the area of the capital and to alleviate this condition, T'ai Tsung releases another 3,000 ladies of the seraglio as the condition is heaven's answer to their tears. (630) Embassies from a large number of kingdoms arrive at the capital and make their submission. Also some of the 15 tribes of Turkomens make their submission to T'ai Tsung: Chieh-li is angered by this and war commences: The Chinese armies overwhelm the Turkomens, Chieh-li is taken prisoner (to Kau Tsu's delight): The whole of the Turkomen territories (including Shensi?) is absorbed into the Chinese empire and divided into 10 departments with 10 Chinese rulers. Chieh-li is made a high mandarin of the capital, Tu-li becomes a governor of Kwangsi. (632) China rejoices in her peace and bountiful harvest this year. T'ai Tsung refuses to repair to one of the sacred mountains to thank Heaven stating that Shin Wang (Ts'in dynasty) did and his dynasty fell but Wen Ti (Han dynasty) didn't and he passed his dynasty on. (637) Death of T'ai Tsung's queen, he is greatly saddened. Keeping her dying wishes, the Imperial University becomes a great gathering place of intellectuals from not only China but Korea, Sin-la and T'u-fan. T'ai Tsung's eldest son, however, plots his father's death, is found out, and put to death. (638) Wu-how daughter of the governor of Kingchow, is taken into the emperor's seraglio. She is beautiful yet unscrupulous. (641) T'ai Tsung sends an ambassador to Korea, he returns reporting that there are many Chinese living there, captured during Yang Ti's campaigns and prevented from returning home. The emperor is vexed at this. (645) An embassy comes from Sin-lo asking for help against Kau-li and Bai-ji (the three kingdoms comprising Korea) who have allied to conquer Sin-lo. T'ai Tsung sends an ambassador to investigate but Kai Su-wen who has killed the king of Korea sends back silver. Unsatisfied, T'ai Tsung sends his armies; one under Chang-liang with 500 ships, the second under Li Shih-tsi. They successfully capture city after city (including Liau-tung) but are stopped at An-shih. The armies are forced to retreat, leaving Kai Su-wen master of Korea. (649) Another great force with large warships is prepared for another assault on Korea. Meanwhile, readying for the transference of power, T'ai Tsung composes a treatise on "How a King Should Conduct Himself" Aslo, the royal astronomer Li-fung tells T'ai Tsung that a queen will soon rule China; this is a

foreboding thought. (650) Death of T'ai Tsung of dysentery; his ninth son succeeds him as P3 Kau (Kao) Tsung (22 years old). Wu-how retires to a Buddhist nunnery. He continues his fathers benign rule. He refuses to allow the traditional burying of servants with dead nobles. This year Kau Tsung reverses the Korean policy, disbands the armies and stays hostilities at all points. Since his queen Wang-shih is childless he appoints Chung, a son of one of his concubines, as his heir. Wang-shih, jealous of the concubine Siau-shuh, introduces Kau Tsung to Wu-how (who, however, has been visited by Kau Tsung at the nunnery when he goes there to worship). Soon, Wang-shih realizes her mistake and has Wu-how's son killed; Wu-how brings this to the emperor's attention and he announces intention to depose Wang-shih and elevate Wu-how. (656) (Nov) Against his minister's advice, Wang-shih is formally degraded and Wu-how made queen. Now the new queen has Wang-shih and Siau-shuh cast into prison where they soon die. (657) Wu-how has the nobles and faithful ministers who opposed her becoming queen killed. (662) The T'ieh-leh barbarians invade from west of Shensi and rain destruction. An army under hueh-jin defeats them with great slaughter. (665) Wu-how manages to prevent her abolition (for Kau Tsung dislikes her despotism) and to prevent further moves of this kind, begins attending all audiences with the ministers with her husband. (666) Kau Tsung goes atop T'ai-shan mountain and worships God then makes offerings at the grave of Confucius. (667-8) Generals Li-tsi and Sieh Jin-kwei lead a Chinese expedition against Korea. Battle of Kin-shan, the Koreans are defeated; Liau-tung is taken; the Yalu is crossed and the capital Ping-yang is taken: Korea is divided into five colonies: Li-tsi with 20,000 men holds Ping-yang and appoints both Chinese and native officials to govern Korea. (668) Kau Tsung, feeling like a nonentity under Wu-how's despotism, suggests he resign in her favor; the plan is scrapped after the strenuous opposition of his ministers. Nevertheless, desiring to be exalted in the eyes of their subjects, they assume the titles Heavenly Emperor and Heavenly Empress (Kau Tsung's suggestion probably would have been accepted had not Wu-how had her son Fung poisoned and his brother Hien banished for remonstrating with her; both had appointed heirs to the throne). (679) 180,000 Turfans under king K'un-ling arise: Battle of Ts'ing-hai (the Azure Sea or Kokonor); Chinese army under Li King-huan is defeated but a treaty of peace is concluded. (681) The Turfans and the Turkomens begin making inroads on the T'ang kingdom. (683) After fighting in eight great battles, the Chinese under general Lu Sze-teh gain mastery over the Turfans and expell them from Chinese territory. (684) Death of Kau Tsung. His seventh son Cho succeeds as P4 Chung Tsung. But determined to hand over his rule to his father-in-law, Wu-how has him degraded to Prince Lu-ling and his brother Li-tan made emperor P5 Jui Tsung, Wen Ming. Actually, rule is in the hands of empress P6 Wu-how (Hou). She is plotting the disappearance of the T'angs and to establish of a new dynasty (her own): She abolishes the ancient temples of T'ang and erects seven magnificent ones to her own family. Her spies keep her informed of any danger that may threaten her. She is open in her amour with Buddhist bonze Hwai-yi who is allowed freedom in the palace. (689) Two T'ang princes rebell and are crushed: Wu-how has about 650 T'ang families siezed: Her minister Ti Jin-kieh has her only execute four of the chiefs, the rest are banished from their homes. Using this pretext, the Empress begins getting rid of T'angs here and there for various reasons. (694) Wu-how has a great temple built at large public expense for Hwai-yi, but he brings 10,000 bonzes into it that Wu-how sees as a peril to the government and banishes them: Hwai-yi burns the temple; Wu-how has it rebuilt and Hwai-yi killed. (696) The Kitans invade into Chihli, ravage and plunder then withdraw. (699) The Turkomens invade and ravage Chihli, reducing the people to distress; many submit to them and others take to robbery: A rebellion is building and Ti Jin-kieh suggests a general amnesty will stop it, Wu-how agrees and the building rebellion disappears. (705) Wu-how becomes ill: Two leading men in a conspiracy against her demand she resign in favor of her son Cho, Prince of Lu-ling. This she does and Cho becomes emperor as P7 Chung Tsung. His queen Wei, however, desires to be another Wu-how and immediately begins gathering imperial power into her hands. (706) Death of Wu-how, she is 81. Queen Wei is in the hands of San-su, governor of the palace, for she has not the abilities of Wu-how (he has married Wei's daughter): He rids the palace of five of the most loyal ministers and swept everyone else that may oppose her out of her way. (710) Queen Wei and San-sei plot the death of Prince Li-tan, fourth son of Wu-how, after having poisoned Chung Tsung. Li Ch'ung, raised to the throne by Queen Wei as Wen-wang (Li Ch'ung-mao) but does not rule. Son of Li-tan, Liu-ki, gathers a body of men, enters the palace, and kills Wei and her accomplices. Li-tan ascends the throne as P9 Jui Tsung. He settles the succession by proclaiming his third son Liu-ki as heir and this is agreed to by his eldest son Ch'eng-ki. (713, Aug) A comet crosses the royal stars (the Dipper and other circumpolar stars); Jui Tsung's ministers fortell great disasters unless he resigns his throne; he does and Liu-ki ascends as P10 Hsuan Tsung (35 years old). His first act is to execute his sister and her followers; she wished to become another Wu-how and plotted his death as soon as he became emperor. Chang Kiu-ling is prime minister. Hsuan Tsung enjoys music and desires more joyful music composed and played – about this time is composed the "Pear Garden" which soon gains wide popularity. He is simple in tastes and opposes extravagant dress. He sets the example of less ostentatiousness and more thrift. Institutes regular exams for district magistrate with candidates chosen from the statute books and not Confucian classics. (733) Hsuan Tsung orders Chiang Tai-kung be the tutelary god of the dynasty to be worshipped by all government officials. (734) China is divided into 15 circuits or provinces: The Western Capital, the Eastern Capital, Koannei, Honan, Hotung, Hopeh, Lungyew, East Shannan,

West Shannan, Chien-nan, Hwai-nan, East Kiang-nan, West Kiang-nan, Ch'ien-tsung and Ling-nan. About this time an embassy from the Turfans arrives at Ch'ang-nan begging for a complete set of the Confucian classics. This is done as it is seen to only benefit China. This year too, the ambitious Li Lin-fu appears in the council of state. Also, the Kitans besiege Kwachow but the garrison commander, Chang Show-kwei, through a trick, forces their retreat, chases them and defeats them, killing their leader. (735) An army under general Ngan Luh-shan, marches against the Ki-tans but suffers a resounding defeat: Chang Kiu-ling counsels Ngan Luh-shan's death but Hsuan Tsung says no and gives the general a position in Shan-tung. (736) Hsuan Tsung, on Chang Kiu-ling's advice, quits his intention of deposing the heir apparent and placing his 18th son, Prince Shaw, as heir. The prince's mother and Li Lin-fu, however, wish to see prince Shaw as heir and engineers Chang Kiu-ling's departure from court: Now Li Lin-fu becomes prime minister. (740) Death of Hwei Hwuy, Hsuan Tsung's favorite: He now becomes enamored of Yang Kwei-fei, Prince Shaw's concubine. This year too, Confucius is elevated to the rank of a Prince. (745) Hsuan Tsung raises his harem favorite Yang Kwei-fei to the position of Kwei-fei, second in rank to the empress. This places her lover Ngan Luh-shan, a major-general in command of the troops in Chih-li, the greatest power in the country next to the Emperor. The only man in Ngan Luh-shan's way is Li Lin-fu who by this time has earned the intense hatred of the country: He, to prevent opposition to his planned power grab, has Hsuan Tsung greatly reduce the size of the frontier armies and place the defense of the frontiers in the hands of the Turkomans. (754) Death of Li Lin-fu. Yang Kwoh, a cousin of Yang Kwei-fei, becomes prime minister: He has Ngan Luh-shan inform the emperor that Li Lin-fu was plotting his overthrow. Enraged, Hsuan Tsung has Li Lin-fu's coffin exhumed, the body stripped of its adornments and his family killed. Now Ngan Luh-shan begins his bid for power with a hatred of the new prime minister - a deadly enmity exists between them. (755) First mention of the Hanlin or Imperial Academy this year (although it existed earlier in Hsuan Tsung's reign): Its main function is to write the first drafts of Imperial edicts. It also serves as a repository upon which the emperor can draw when desiring to make a decision. (756, Dec) Ngan Luh-shan raises a rebellion. Battle of K'ai-fung-fu (in Honan), he defeats the royal forces under Fung-ch'ang: The rebel thus gains possession of Lohyang. Now, royal army under Kwo Tze-i and Li Kwang-pi march against the rebels and defeat them. Battle of Ling-pau; the royal troops under Ko Shu-han are defeated by Ngan Luh-shan; valuing his life, Ko Shu-han joins the rebels. Hsuan Tsung flees toward Szechwan: at Ma-wei his soldiers rebel, calling for the death of prime minister Yang Kwoh as being the cause of the rebellion. Hsuan Tsung is powerless and the prime minister is killed. Now the death of Yang Kwei-fei is demanded, Hsuan Tsung is so saddened by her murder he resigns his throne to his third son who rules as

P11 Su Tsung. Meanwhile, Ngan Luh-shan enters Ch'ang-ngan, murders the palace ladies and loyal families and submits the capital to riot and debauchery. Su Tsung comes to the throne with rebels acquiring territory all around. (756-7) The rebel Shih-ming captures P'ing-yuan, Ch'ing-ho, P'o-p'ing, Sin-tu and Jiau-yang. Another rebel general, Tze-chi, surrounds and besieges the town of Sui-yang under the command of Chang-sun who puts up a valiant defense but is finally defeated. Meanwhile, Ngan Luh-shan, the cause of all the rebelliousness, is killed by his son Ngan K'ing-su over a succession dispute. (785-9, Sept) Battle of Ch'ang-ngan: Su Tsung is allied with Kwo Tze-i, the Turfans, Shu (the heir apparent), Wang Sze-li and 4,000 Ouigars led by Yeh-hu: The capital is retaken and next lies Lohyang under Ngan K'ing-su Battle of Lohyang; royal troops under Kwo Tze-i, Li Kwang-pi and Yeh-hu defeat Ngan K'ing-su: He flees to Yeh where through suspicion of Shih Tze-ming (who didn't help him at Lohyang) causes the latter to join with the royal cause. (759) Less than six months later, Shih Tze-ming forgets his recent allegiance to the emperor and is again commanding a rebel army. (Nov) Two royal armies under Kwo Tze-i and Li Kwang-pi invest Yeh but are unable to capture K'ing-su who is now aided by Shih Tze-ming. Kwo Tze-i is forced to retreat. (759-60) Shih Tze-ming enters Yeh, kills K'ing-su and thereby becomes chief rebel against the royal government. Li Kwang-pi supercedes Kwo Tze-i but he is forced to retreat from Lohyang, going to Tanyang (761) For the last 18 months fighting has been constant with alternating successes, now Shih Tze-ming is killed by his son Shin Chao-i, abating the rebel danger for awhile. (763) Death of Su Tsung; succeeded by his son Shu as

P12 Tai Tsung. The eunuch Li Hu-kwoh tries to control Tai Tsung more so than he did Su Tsung but the emperor has him put to death. (763-4) The Ouigors under chief Tingli enter Honan and (after a short episode of plundering) defeat the rebels, ending the rebellion of Ngan Luh-shan. (764-5) Now, however, the victorious barbarians, taking advantage of the weakened empire, combine to take it over; the Turfans and others march on Singan; Kwo Tze-i is forced to retreat. (765) The barbarians cross the Wei and seize the capital. Tai Tsung flees to Honan. Now Hwai-yen, father-in-law of the Ouigor king joins the barbarians against the emperor but his soldiers go over to Kwo Tze-i forcing Hwai-yen to flee to his new allies. (766) Hwai-yen approaches the royal armies but dies. The Turfans capture and plunder Fang-t'ien then retreat to their territories. The Ouigors conclude a peace with Kwo Tze-i: Now at peace, Kwo Tze-i turns his soldiers into farmers to rebuild the country's shattered economy. This year too, a magnificent Buddhist monastery is built in the capital by the eunuch Yu and a solemn service for Tai Tsung's dead ancestors is held.

P13 Teh Tsung (son, 39 years old). To reduce state expenditures, he sends home several hundred harem ladies and also sends adrift many elephants in the royal menagerie, also he informs his ambassadors to not receive presents and tribute from tributary countries to be of their common commodities. His two finance ministers increase popular prosperity; Liu-yen increases the yield of the salt tax and Yang-yen manages to have Teh Tsung abolish the land

tax, compulsory labor and payment in kind; all to be substituted by a semi-annual collection of a money (income) tax. The two ministers feud and Yang-yen is banished for having engineered the death of Liu-yen. (781) A rebellion in Chihli breaks out led by nobles angered at Teh Tsung's policy of refusing their titles to be transferred to their children: It is put down. Soon, however, a new uprising led by Chu-tze forces Teh Tsung to flee to Hien-yang then to Fang-t'ien. With death of Kwo Tze-i, Chu-tze is all powerful; he declares the end of the T'ang dynasty and establishment of his, the Han; he executes 27 members of the royal family and besieges Fang-t'ien. Soon an army under Lu-ch'i drives the besiegers away but fighting continues. (785) To bring the rebellion to an end, Teh Tsung, on the advice of his minister Luh-ch'i, confesses his sins to the people and thereby rallies their support: Chu-tze's adherents desert him and he is finally killed, ending the rebellion; Teh Tsung returns to his capital. (805) By this time the Tur-fans are prevented from gaining possession of the northern part of the empire; the chief of the Ouigors marries Teh Tsung's daughter Hien-ngan; and floods ravage parts of the empire. Upon the death of Teh Tsung, his son becomes emperor as

P14 Shun Tsung. After a few months he abdicates in favor of his son who rules as

P15 Hien (Hsien) Tsung (28 years old). Prime minister is P'ei-tu. He must be very circumspect in dealing with the palace eunuchs that have gained considerable power. Liu-pi, governor in Szchwan, raises a rebellion. An army under general Kau Tsung-wen manages to defeat him: Liu-pi and his family are sent to the capital and executed. (816) Wu-yuan (disliking not being able to succeed his father) leads a rebellion in Honan, Hwai-si district, aided by Li Sz-tau. Hien Tsung sends generals Han-yuan and Li-su after Wu-yuan. (818) Dissatisfied with the slow pace of suppressing the rebels, Hien Tsung sends prime minister P'ei-tu against them. Battle of Tsai-chow; Li-su defeats and captures Wu-yuan. Soon, Li Sz-tau gives himself up. Soon, Hien Tsung comes under the influence of the Taoist charlatan Liu-pi in his search for immortality. (819) Hien Tsung announces desire to honor the Buddhist monastery at Fa-men (because it holds a Buddhist finger); the minister Han Wen-kung (who reconciled Buddhism and the philosophy of Sun-tze) protests and is given a post in Chau-chow district near Swatow. (820) Liu-pi flees in fear, for Hien Tsung hasn't found the promised herb of immortality. The eunuchs, however, concoct an "appropriate" herb. (821) The eunuchs kill Hien Tsung with their concoction. His third son Hing becomes emperor as

P16 Mu Tsung. He has Liu-pi executed. He restores Han-yu to favor. He is killed by an elixer of immortality concocted by palace eunuchs.

P17 King (Ching) Tsung (son). Hedonistic, the minister Shui-si pleads with him to attend to the government but to no avail. Li-teh, a Chehkiang governor, pleads the same but to no avail. (827) Having treated his eunuchs badly, King Tsung is killed by eunuch Liu-k'o.

P18 Wen Tsung (brother). Temperate and conservative, he dismisses 3,000 ladies from the royal harem. While earnestly attending to the affairs of state, he is nevertheless controlled to a great extent by the eunuchs. (828) Wen Tsung creates the degree of Kujin (see 607). Liu-fan is the first to pass with a paper describing the corrupt powers of the palace eunuchs; Liu-fan is not given the degree. Now Wen Tsung begins planning with his prime minister to wipe out the eunuchs but the secret isn't kept very well and the eunuchs force the prime minister to resign. (834) Still trying to escape eunuch powers, Wen Tsung appoints the eunuch C'hen Sz-liang in the place of chief Wang-shen and to eventually have Wang-shen killed. At his funeral it is resolved to rid the palace of them but the plot is discovered and the eunuchs kill many of the plotters. (841) Death of Wen Tsung. The eunuchs raise his brother (fifth son of Mu Tsung) Ch'an as

P19 Wu Tsung (27 years old). He has his nephew Ch'eng-mi murdered. He is competent and able. (847) By this time Wu Tsung has suppressed a rebellion under Liu Chan and repelled an Ouigor invasion. Also, he orders all Taoist and Buddhist priests and nuns to return to their homes and engage in productive pursuits. However, he searches for the elixer of life and dies. The eunuchs nominate

P20 Suan (Hsuan) Tsung (37 years old, 13th son of Hien Tsung). Elevated because he seems half-witted, which they soon find out is not the case: Intelligent and decisive, he nevertheless falls prey to the Taoist charlatans in the desire for an elixer of immortality. (857) A famous Taoist priest from Canton informs Suan Tsung that no such elixer exists. Suan Tsung stops his search for awhile. (859) A Taoist priest gives Suan Tsung an "elixir of life" which sickens him. (860) He dies, succeeded by

P21 I Tsung (son, 17 years old). Proud and arrogant, an insurrection under Ch'ui-hu erupts in Cheh-kiang: The rebels capture Ningpo and Shau-hing (controlling the national treasury). Soon royal troops capture Ch'ui-hu behead him and end their rebellion. (863) Laos barbarians invade Tonquin and orders are sent to Kiangnan to furnish troops to drive them out. Meanwhile, I Tsung's hedonism and nonconsideration for his people is weighing heavily upon them; discontent is rising. (869) The Chinese forces finally expell the Laotians; orders are sent, however, to keep the Kwangsi regiment in place another year; a widespread rebellion ensues; royal forces are sent. (870) Royal forces finally suppress the rebellion. (874) I Tsung dies three months after the arrival of one of Buddha's bones at the palace (Chang-ngan).

P22 Hi (Hsi) Tsung (son, 12 years old). He comes to the throne with his people over-taxed, plagued with great floods and accepting brigandage as a way of life without relief from the mandarins. Wang-sien, joined by Hwang-ch'au leads a successful rebellion that siezes many cities (878) Death of Wang-sien, Hwang-ch'au becomes soul leader of the rebellion and is set upon by gen Hau-ping. (881) General Hau-ping forces Hwang-ch'au to flee to

southern China. (882-3) Driven by a plague, Hwang-ch'au leads his rebels north capturing Chung-sa, Lohyang then Ch'ang-ngan: Hi Tsung flees to Hing-yuan and Hwang-ch'au exterminates every available member of the royal family: He proclaims himself emperor of "The Great Ts'i" dynasty. Royal troops pour in from all quarters while the government of Sz-chwan protects Hi Tsung. Now commander Li K'eh-yung leads a force of "Crows" who defeat the rebels at Ch'ang-ngan. Hwang-ch'au flees to Ts'ai-chow where the governor joins Li K'eh-yung; the re-bels flee to Tin-chow in Honan and to Yen-chow: Here the royalists are attacked by forces under Chu-wen (who used to serve under Hwang-ch'au, is now royalist by hates Li K'en-yung); he drives Li K'en-yung's forces away. (884) Hwang-ch'au enters Yen-chow and is killed by his nephew Liu-yen who, with the rebellion collapsing, wishes to join the emperor. In the contest for the spoils of the victory, Liu-yen loses his life. Now Hi Tsung, trying to attain a precarious peace, commands Li K'eh-yung and Chu-wen to be friends. (888) The eunuch Ch'an-ling deprives gov Wang-chung of his salt monopoly; a rebellion ensues; Ch'an-ling sends troops against the governor who refuses to be deposed. Li K'eh-yung comes to Wang-chung's aid and forces Ch'an-ling to flee with Hi Tsung to Fung-siang where the eunuch's soldiers abandon him. He and the emperor flee to Shan-kwan, now Hi Tsung finally takes Li K'eh-yung's advice and banishes Ch'an ling to Canton; Hi Tsung returns triumphantly to Ch'ang-ngan. (889) Death of Hi Tsung.

P23 Chau (Chao) Tsung (brother). He makes Chu-wen a prince and he in turn impeaches Li K'eh-yung. Imperial forces march against Li; Battle of P'ingyang; Imperial forces are defeated by Li K'eh-yung's forces. Chau Tsung confines Li K'en-yung in all his appointments and honors. (894) Death of Wang-chung; a contest arises between his two sons over his succession (one son is Li K'eh-yung's son-in-law, the other is supported by three governors). The governors march on Singan, kill the prime minister to force Chau Tsung to grant the brother they support Wang-chung's position. Li K'eh-yung defeats the rebels and is made Prince of Tsin. (901) The palace eunuchs led by Liu-kwei lock up Chau Tsung and his queen in an iron bound room. The mandarin Ts'ui-yin sends for Chu-wen who frees the emperor and whose troops massacre a great many of the eunuchs. (903) By this time a bitter rivalry has arisen between Chu-wen and Li-mau, governor of Fung-siang, over who should possess the emperor. Li-mau gains Chau Tsung's favor and Chu-wen besieges his city Fung-siang. Li-mau has Chau Tsung call Li K'eh-yung to his assistance: Battle of Tsin-yang; Chu-wen defeats Li K'eh-yung and returns to the siege of Fung-siang. (904) 162 eunuchs are murdered and Fung-siang gives up; Chau Tsung accepts Chu-wen's keeping. Upon arriving at Singan, several hundred more eunuchs are killed. (905) Chu-wen, desiring the throne, kills some influential mandarins and moves Chau Tsung to Lohyang. (Sept) Secretly called by Chau Tsung, royal troops come from every quarter to rescue the emperor; Chu-wen has Li-tsin murder Chau Tsung and appoints Chau Tsung's ninth son emperor as P24 Chau Soan [Chao Huan Ti -or; Ai Ti](14 years old). (905-6) Chu-wen has Chau Soan's other brothers killed: He has over 30 loyal mandarins killed on the advice of royal astronomer Lin-ts'an who has seen a foreboding comet. Soon, however, a rumor of the astronomer being in a plot to restore the T'angs causes Chu-wen to have him killed. (907, March) Chau Soan resigns his throne to Chu-wen who makes Chau Soan Prince of Ts'i-yin in Shan-tung. Chu-wen becomes emperor as

WU TAI: Epoch of the Five Dynasties

Q1 The LATER LIANG Dynasty

Q1-1 T'ai Tsu. Many of the governors refuse to accept his rule, such as Li K'eh-yung, Prince of Tsin and Li-mau of Funkien in Szchwan. The latter advises the former to take the royal title and rule as he is doing: Li K'eh-yung refuses to do so for now. Soon 3,000 Khitans under Apanki (R1 Ye-lu A-pao-chi) invade Li-mau's territory and he is forced to conclude a pact of alliance against T'ai Tsu although he is secretly negotiating with him. (908) Death of Li K'eh-yung. He is succeeded by his son Li Ts'un-hu who immediately puts his uncle to death for plotting his death. He now plans an assault against T'ai Tsu. (909) Battle of Chia-chai, in Luchow; Li Ts'un-hu captures the city that was supposed to have been made impregnable by T'ai Tsu. Li now turns to domestic reforms; lighter taxes, provides care for orphans, vindicates the oppressed and passes laws against adultery and robbery. (912) Liu Shen-kwang of Wen renounces allegiance to Tsin and proclaims himself emperor. Li Ts'un-hu vows to end that dynasty. (913) T'ai Tsu marches against Li Ts'un-hu in Yinchow (in Chihli) but is forced to retreat: While Li Ts'un-hu is advancing on the capital, Yiu-kwei, T'ai Tsu's third son murders him and becomes emperor. He orders the fourth son, Yiu-ching, to murder the second son (heir apparent). Now the late emperor's son-in-law plots with the fourth son the death of Yiu-kwei; but Yiu-kwei and his wife commit suicide. Yiu-ching ascends as emperor as Q1-2 Mo Ti (Dynastic title; T'ien). This year Li Ts'un-hu marches against Liu Shen-kwang, defeats him and takes over his territory. (915) Li Ts'un-hu marches against Liang and is joined by the people of Siang-chow who dislike Mo Ti for his cruel treatment of them: Li Ts'un-hu forces the imperial armies to retreat. (916) (Winter) Crossing the Yellow River on the ice, Li Ts'un-hu is besting the imperial armies. (917) The Khitans under [R1] Apanki, aided by one of Li Ts'un-hu's brothers, invade Shansi; they besiege Yiuchow. Li Ts'un-hu sends half his force under Li Sz-yuan who quickly drives the invaders off. (918) Warfare continues then Li Ts'un-hu returns to Tsin. (919) Li Ts'un-hu enters Shan-tung, he himself barely escapes a trap then soundly defeats the Liang soldiers who escape into Honan. (922) Li Ts'un-hu captures the great seal of the empire; his officers and ministers advise him to proclaim

himself emperor. (923, April) Li Ts'un-hu takes the title emperor as

Q2 The LATER (or After) T'ANG DYNASTY

Q2-1 Chwang (Chuang) Tsung. Establishes capital at Weichow, Chihli. Unfortunately, now being emperor, his character begins to degenerate. (Summer) Ch-wang Tsung leads an army into Shantung where the Liang gen submits. Soon Mo Ti's army attacks Chwang Tsung's forces and is defeated. No Li Sz-yuan leads 5,000 man against Lohyang and reaches Ts'auhow. Mo Ti commits suicide and Sz-yuan reaches Lohyang and is rapturously greeted by the people. Later the same day Chwang Tsung reaches the city and takes possession. (925) The Khitans plunder Shansi and Sz-yuan drives them out. Now the governor of Sz-chwan claims independence and an army under Kwo Ch'ung-t'au who puts an end to the governor's dreams in 70 days. (926) The army stationed in Yeh, north of Honan, mutinies. Li Sz-yuan is sent to quell it but his soldiers join the rebels; no one likes the now degenerate Chwang Tsung: They demand Li Sz-yuan to be emperor. Hearing of the rebellion, one of Chwang Tsung's actor companions, Kwo Ch'ung-k'ien, desires to be emperor: He and his followers fight Chwang Tsung and his followers; Chwang Tsung is killed. Meanwhile, about this time Apanti dies and his second son Ye-lu Te-kuang becomes Khitan king R2 T'ai Tsung. Soon Li Sz-yuan arrives and a month later becomes emperor as

Q2-2 Ming Tsung. His first act is to kill the play actors that killed Chwang Tsung. Now Ming Tsung gives his son Ts'ung-yung the command of the Imperial troops and son-in-law Shih King-t'ang his lieutenant. (932) The art of printing is developed this year; Ming Tsung orders the nine classics printed by the use of wooden blocks and copies sold to all the public. (934) Ming Tsung is compelled to have T'sung-yung killed but dies a month later. Third son emperor as

Q2-3 Min Ti. Eldest adopted brother Li Ts'ung-k'o refuses to recognize him, marches to sieze the throne: Min Ti flees to Weichow, in Shantung, where Shih Kung-t'ang kills his followers but spares Min Ti. Soon, Li Ts'ung-k'o arrives in K'ai-fung-fu and is recognized as Min Ti's successor as

Q2-4 Fei Ti (Lu Wang). He rewards Shih K'ing-t'ang with the governorship of Shantung and orders Min Ti to kill himself; he refuses and is killed. (935) Shih K'ing-t'ang, fearing Fei Ti's attitude towards him, decide to rebel: He sends his resignation to Fei Ti. The emperor, seeing the drift, accepts but gives Shih K'ing-t'ang a similar position elsewhere. A council of war, attended by Liu Chih-wan and Sang Yu-i, decides to bring in (R2) Teh Kwang's Khitans, lured by promise of 16 departments in Shensi. Now Shih K'ing-t'ang informs Fei Ti that an adopted son cannot rule, demanding his resignation. Fei Ti refuses: Battle of Fan-ch'u in Shensi; the allied rebel forces defeat royal forces who retreat to Tsin-yang and are besieged. Fei Ti attempts to aid Tsin-yang but gives in to bouts of drunkenness. (936) On Teh-kwang's advice, Shih K'ing-t'ang proclaims himself emperor of the After Tsin dynasty. He hands over the 16 districts in Shansi to the Khitans. Soon Tsin-yang is surrendered, the army moves on: Battle of Lu-chow; the imperial army is defeated. Shih K'ang-t'ang marches on; Fei Ti immolates himself, family and great seal. Shih K'ang-t'ang enters K'ai-Fung-fu and is welcomed. He becomes emperor as

Q3 The LATER (or After) TSIN (Chin) DYNASTY

Q3-1 Kau (Kao) Tsu. Universal submission, however, is not his: The people are distressed, the pecuniary demands for services rendered by the Khitan is a heavy tax burden and the high mandarins dislike paying obeisance to a barbarian king ([R2] Teh-kwang of the Khi-tans). This year the Khitans give their dynasty the name Liau (Liao), imitating in every way the Chinese. Also this year, Su Chih-kau leads a rebellion in Hwainan and Kiangnan calling himself king and his new dynasty Southern T'ang. (938) The Kitan dynasty (Liao) establishes their capital at Yen-ching (Peking). (941) Military commanders led by general Ngan-chung plan to shake off the Khitan yoke but Liu Chih-wan dissuades Kau Tsu as the price of the yoke is less than that of war: He suggests teaching the people agriculture and training soldiers for war. It is done. (942-3) Death of Kau Tsu after Teh-kwang's reproaches for engaging treaty relations with another barbarian tribe without his knowledge. Kau Tsu's choice for his successor is his minor son but the ministers instead raise his nephew as

Q3-2 Ch'uh (Ch'u) Ti. First act is to order the murder of every Khitan in his dominions there for trade, etc: This makes Teh-kwang very angry. (944) Teh-kwang sends an army into Chihli to besiege Peichow, but Ch'uh Ti leads the royal forces against the Khitans and drives them back. Meanwhile, CIC Liu Chih-wan, who disagrees with Ch'uh Ti's policy toward the Khitans refuses to obey Ch'uh Ti's commands, standing by (upon the advice of captain Kwo-wei) to see how the wind blows. (946) Ch'uh Ti again battles the Khitans, is at first successful but later is defeated. (947) The Khitans enter Honan and Ch'uh Ti submits to them. Teh-kwang gives Ch'uh Ti the title "Ungrateful Marquis", banishing him and his family to Hwang-ling, in Tartary. The Khitans now plunder K'ai-fung-fu, arousing the hatred of the people; they withdraw. Now Liu Chih-wan is called, he enters K'ai-fung-fu and becomes emperor as

Q4 The LATER (or After) HAN DYNASTY

Q4-1 Kau (Kao) Tsu. Meanwhile, Khitan king Teh-kwang dies to the great joy of the Chinese: He is succeeded by R3 Shih Tsung. (948) Kau Tsu becomes sick; he entrusts his son (18 years old) to Kwo-wei and three other ministers and warns to be on guard of the governor of Tu-wei. He dies, his son succeeds as

Q4-2 Yin Ti. On his ministers orders, the governor of Tu-wei is put to death. (949) The Khitans invade Chihli; Yin Ti sends Kwo-wei in command of the royal armies against them; he defeats them and drives them back into Tartary. Also this year, the appearance of evil omens sends the palace to reading T'ai Tsung's "Proper Government of a Nation". Soon peace is restored but Yin Ti becomes restive under the four nobles his father entrusted to care for him. (951) Yin Ti has three of the nobles murdered and instructs Kwo-wei to kill himself. Kwo-wei and his army march on the capital to rid Yin Ti of his bad influential ministers: Yin Ti sees this as a rebellion and assembles an army to meet it and is accidentally killed. Liu-tsung, Prince of North Han, hearing of this, raises the standard of rebellion. Kwo-wei agrees with the Empress-Dowager to place Kau Tsu's nephew, son of Liu-tsung, on the throne. With his son on the throne, Liu-tsung abandons his rebellion. Kwo-wei now goes to fight the Khitans (now ruled by R4 Mu Tsung) who have captured Sun-teh in Chihli: Soon his soldiers balk, stating he should be ruler and not one to whom he is unknown. They return to the capital, the Empress-Dowager accedes and Kwo-wei becomes emperor as

Q5 The LATER (or After) CHOW DYNASTY

Q5-1 T'ai Tsu. The deposed nephew of Kau Tsu is sent to Honan as Duke of Shang-yin and later killed. Now Liu-tsung of North Han again rebels, asserting the independence of his territory from the empire. T'ai Tsu rules in relative peace, visiting once the tomb of Confucius. (954) T'ai Tsu becomes ill and is succeeded by his son the Prince of Tsin as

Q5-2 Shih Tsung (33 years old). Liu-tsung of North Han with Khitans as allies besiege Liuchow. Shih Tsung leads the imperial forces against them and is losing when he is saved by captain Chau Kwang-yin who manages to turn the tide and send the invaders back; Liu-tsung returns to his territory and the Khitans theirs. (955) Shih Tsung announces his desire to pacify China (with a large part of Shansi under Liu-tsung; Kiangnan under Li-king; Szchwan under Ming-ying and Chihli (or Liau-tung) under the Khitans (Liao dyn)) Wang-p'oh writes the most commendable essay. (956) About this time a serious shortage of copper money is experienced; Shih Tsung orders a melting down of copper utensils and copper idols to be minted into coinage. Later in the year an expedition is sent against the Prince of South T'ang, it is unsuccessful. (957) Another army under Chau Kwang-yin marches against South T'ang, is successful but not enough to force the Prince's submission. (959) After a series of disasters, the Prince of South T'ang concedes to be called an official of the Chow dynasty and surrenders some of his territory to the emperor. Now Shih Tsung busies himself with the reorganization and systemization of Chinese agriculture. (960) Shih Tsung leads his armies against the Khitans to wrest the 16 departments given them by Shih King-t'ang; he regains some but falls ill and three months later dies at K'ai-fing-fu. He is succeeded by his seven year old son as Q5-3 Kung Ti. The Khitans invade and CIC Chau Kw'ang-yin marches against them. Soon his soldiers refuse to cross the Bridge of Ch'eng and proclaim Chau Kw'ang-yin emperor. He states only on condition of sparing the royal family, the palace ministers and no robbing of the treasury. It is agreed and Chau Kw'ang-yin accedes as

S. The SUNG DYNASTY

S1 T'ai Tsu. He gives deposed Kung Ti title of Prince Ching and sends him to Fanng-chow. He orders the royal color to be Brown. He makes his friend Li Tsung-sin governor of Kwang-ling in Shantung. He desires to restore unity to the empire, but Li Chun, governor of Chau-yi in Shansi, raises a rebellion, allied with the Prince of Han. The soldiers of Sung led by T'ai Tsu are successful; Li Chun flees to Tsochow and immolates himself and family. Now Li Tsung-sin, whose uncle Kwo-wei was Chow [Q5-1] emperor T'ai Tsu, attempts to restore that house: Turned down by Chun and the Prince of T'ang as allies, T'ai Tsu marches against him; he is defeated, flees to Kwang-ling and immolates himself and family. (961) With his dying mother, T'ai Tsu agrees to an act of succession whereby each brother in succession rules then T'ai Tsu's sons after them. (962) About this time T'ai Tsu fearing the independent military power he had given to his generals and captains, he assembles them all at a great dinner and appeals to their common sense and patriotism and they resign their military appointments, becoming civilian loyalists and strengthen his crown. (963) T'ai Tsu removes the power of life and death from the governors and hands it over to the Board of Punishments without whose consent no one shall be executed. He also establishes a tribunal to watch them; to assure competent conduct. (Autumn) T'ai Tsu sends an army under Kwo-tsin against the Prince of Han; Loh-p'ing is captured and the Prince of Han, allied with the Khitans, is unable to retake the city. (965) Prime minister Chau-p'u dissuades T'ai Tsu from another attack on Han and directs instead the absorption of Szchwan and Kiangnan. Preparations are made and before the Prince of Szchwan can be aided by Han (Winter) Imperial troops under Wang-ch'uen enter Szchwan and defeat the prince's troops. (966) Another battle and Sung troops capture the Szchwan gen and route his troops, capture Kwei-chow then Chien-nung: The Prince retreats to his capital of Ch'eng-tu where he surrenders to Wang-ch'uen. Now, intoxicated by their victories, Sung troops turn to drunken excess and pillaging, engendering the hatred of the people who besiege Wang-ch'uen in Ch'eng-tu. (967) Late this year T'ai Tsu manages to have Wang-ch'uen freed from Ch'eng-tu and Szchwan becomes a peaceable province of the empire. (968) Accession of R5 Ching Tsung. (970) About this time the beautiful concubine Yau-niang arches her feet to the semblance of the new moon beginning the custom of binding women's feet. This year too, T'ai Tsu begins training his army to go against the Han and regain the remaining departments that Shih King-t'ang had given the

Khitans. (971) A year of fighting only produces a few victories and two sieges of T'ai-yuan when Sung troops are forced to withdraw because of Han's alliance with the over-powering Khitans. (972) Sung armies are successful against the South Han, adding that prince's territories to the empire. Now the Prince of South T'ang gives up the title of Prince. (975) Not trusting the independence of the Prince of South T'ang, T'ai Tsu calls him to attend an audience, the prince feigns sickness. T'ai Tsu sends an army under Ts'au-pin and P'an-mei against South T'ang, they besiege the city of Nanking. (976) After a 12 month siege, Nanking is taken; the city and its population are treated kindly and the territories of South T'ang become part of the empire. (Autumn) T'ai Tsu sends another army against Han but again Khitan troops force Sung's withdrawal. T'ai Tsu becomes ill then dies, and by the agreement with their mother, T'si Tsu's brother Kw'ang-yi becomes emperor as

S2 T'ai Tsung. (979) T'ai Tsung enables the past descendants of Confucius for 44 generations, making the house of the family hereditary. (980) A large army under P'an-mei is sent against Han. The Prince of Han calls in the Khitans and T'ai Tsung sends a contingent under Kwo-tsin to intercept them: Battle of White Horse Ridge; the Khitan are defeated and forced to retreat. Meanwhile, P'an-mei besieges T'ai-yuan, eventually, seeing no hope, the Prince Liu opens the gates and the Sung army takes the city. Prince Liu is made Duke of Kiang-ngan and sent there with his family. Thus ends the North Han dynasty. Now T'ai Tsung wishes to finally defeat the Khitans and the imperial forces advance into Liao-tung. Battle of Kau-liang, the Khitans under gen Yeh-luh Hiu-ko defeat the Sung, forcing them into an ignoble rout. Later Teh-chou, eldest son of T'ai Tsu, cuts his throat after remonstrating with his uncle and thinking of becoming ruler. (981) Battles with the Khitans; a Khitan army marching on Yen-mun is defeated by Yang-yeh while a Khitan force under Yeh-luh Hiu-ko defeats the Sung forces at Wa-ch'ien. (982) A deputation from the Nu-chen Tartars visit T'ai Tsung for the purpose of paying tribute and acknowledging Chinese supremacy. Upon the advice of minister Chau-p'u, the third brother, K'wang-mei, is set outside the succession and T'si Tsung's son is appointed heir apparent. Soon K'wang-mei is caught meditating rebellion and is banished to Fang-chow (dies 984). (983; Accession of R6 Sheng Tsung) (985) By this time T'ai Tsung has added considerably to the imperial library, calling for original copies of all important works from all over the empire. He assiduously studies "The Emperor's Guide for Pacifying His Empire". (986) Because he disapproved of T'ai Tsung's treatment of K'wang-mei, T'ai Tsung's eldest son, now insane, sets fire to part of the palace; he is disinherited and reduced to the rank of commoner. A Korean-Sung alliance sets out against the Khitans the four Sung armies are under generals Ts'au-pin, P'an-mei, T'ien-chung and Mi-sin: Ts'au-pin takes Cho-chaw; P'an-mei takes Hwan-chow and T'ien-chung takes Wei-chow. Battle of Cho-chow; Khitans under Yeh-luh Hui-ko defeat and rout Ts'au-pin. Battle of Ch'en-chia-ku (near Hwan-chow); Yeh-luh Hui-ko defeats and routs Ts'au-pin and Yang-yeh meets his death. Soon Yeh-luh Hui-ko drives the other Sung forces from Khitan territory. (987) After punishing his failing generals, another army, this time under prime minister Chang Ts'i-yen (Lu-toan becomes prime minister) with P'an-mei his second in command, advances on the Khitan from Tai-chow in Shansi: They defeat the Khitans. (988-90) Border warfare with the Khitans with varying successes. Battle of Su-ho in Chihli, Khitan general Yeh-luh Hiu-ko is so severely defeated by Sung general Yin Chi-lun that the Khitans vow to avoid him in the future. (992) Scholar and statesman Kow-chun arrives at the Sung court. A drought and locusts trouble China for sometime this year. The Nutsin Tartars, who had submitted to China, announce that if T'ai Tsung conquers the Khitans, they can continue their submission, if not, they must declare fealty to the Khitans. T'ai Tsung cannot at this time oppose the Khitans and the Nutsins become Khitan subjects. (994) Wang-siau leads a fierce rebellion in Sz-chwan. The people are angry at their treatment by rapacious mandarins, the loss of farmlands by the poor to the rich who store the land's produce waiting for a rise in prices driving the people nearly to starvation. The rebels march on P'ang and sieze the chief magistrate and kill him: Robber bands now range about. T'ai Tsung sends the eunuch Wang Chi-yin against the rebels; he quells the rebellion but because he is not rewarded (being a eunuch) allows his troops to illtreat and rob the people. The rebels again begin to assemble when T'ai Tsung sends another general who restores order. (995) About this time the question of succession is decided in favor of T'ai Tsung's third son. (997-8) T'ai Tsung divides the empire into 15 provinces [East Capital, West Capital, Hopeh, Hotung, Shensi Kwainan, Hunan, Hupeh, Fohkien, Kiangngan, Szchwan, Kwangtung, Kwangsi and the two Chehkiang]. Soon T'ai Tsung dies and Wang Chi-yin attempts to sieze the throne but is prevented by prime minister Lu-toan.

S3 Chen Tsung (30 years old). Prime minister Lu-toan prevents a move by the Empress-Dowager to gain some imperial power. Sighting a comet is interpreted as an ill omen; taxes are remitted and 3,000 prisoners released. (1004) The Khitans invade, capturing city after city arriving at Tan-chow. After much doubt and hesitation, the palace finally listens to the plan of K'ow-chun; Chen Tsung and party march right into Tan-chow to the astonishment of the Khitans; K'ow-chun, now CIC, attacks and besieges and soundly defeats them. An economical treaty of peace is concluded; commercial traffic begins. K'ow-chun is now very famous. (1005) Jealous of K'ow-chun's fame, Wang K'in-joh convinces Chen Tsung (whose character is disintegrating) that the treaty is disgraceful and K'ow-chun should be punished: Chen Tsung sends K'ow-chun as commandant of Shan-chow (in Honan) then of Tai-ming (in Chihli), shocking the Khitans. (1009) Wang K'in-joh (now high in royal favor) makes the most of Chen Tsung's dream that he relates; by appealing to his vanity with three books that had "fallen from heaven", Chen Tsung begins the construction of a lavish temple at considerable public expense (completed (1016). He also de-claims a general amnesty. (1013) Death of the Empress; despite ministerial protests, Chen Tsung makes his favorite concubine Liu

queen; she is intelligent and well versed in politics. (1016) Chau-pau, rebel governor of Hing-chow in Shensi, submits to Chen Tsung. (1021) Chen Tsung becomes quite ill, the government is virtually in the hands of Queen Liu: She and prime minister Ting-wei prevent state duties given to the heir apparent, Ching, as desired by the high mandarins. (1022-3) Dying, Chen Tsung commands K'ow-chun be made a member of the Privy Council. He dies and son Ching accedes as

S4 Jin (Jen) Tsung (13 years old). Queen Liu is appointed regent. Ting-wei (prime minister) has K'ow-chun banished to Lui-chow in Canton province. Soon, however, Ting-wei is banished to an even more distant province. (1027) The Yellow River spreads a great flood over Honan, Kiangnan and country to the North. Jin Tsung orders the supply of food to the dispossessed and the remittance of taxes in the flooded areas. This year too, Teh-ming, son of Chau-pau, raises a rebellion: He sends his son Chau-yuan who besieges the city of Kan-chow. (1029) Death of the emperor's mother. (1031) Accession of R7 Hsing Tsung. (1033) Death of regent Liu; she is accused of having Jin Tsung's mother killed but an investigation disproves this. (1037) A great earthquake wrecks Honan and Shensi, killing 22,000 and wounding five to 6,000 more. (1040) Chau-ming, son of Teh-ming, determined to expand his domains, captures the city of Pau-ngan. Ti-ts'ing a border captain, leads his forces and defeats Chau-ming, forcing him to retreat. (1041) Chau-yuan again advances and is met by the army of Han-k'i in Sz-chwan, after a three-day battle Chau-yuan still holds the advantage. Meanwhile, Han-k'i sends 7,000 men under lieutenant Jin-fu captures Hia-chow and destroys Chau-yuan's supplies there. (1042) Chau-yuan defeats Han-k'i's army, Jin-fu is killed; Han-k'i is demoted to Ts'ui-chow and his replacement, Fan Chung-yen, is also sent away to Si-ngan for refusing Chau-yuan's peace terms. Now Chau-yuan takes Fungchow; Jin Tsung recalls the two generals and four armies are set up; Fan Chung-yen in Ch'ing-chow, Han-k'i in Tsui-chow, Wang-yen in Wei-chow and P'ang-tsih in Yen-chow. P'ang-tsih must rebuild Yen-chow for it has been desolated by warfare. Fan Chung-yen begins building a city at Ta-shun on Chau-yuan's path; by the time Chau-yuan arrives, the walls are high enough for battle and Chau-yuan retreats. Meanwhile, the Khitans send an ambassador demanding 10 Chinese counties on threat of war. Ambassador Fu-pi is sent to the Khitans and negotiates an expensive treaty avoiding the secession of territory. (1043) Chau-yuan submits terms of peace to Jin Tsung, they are accepted: Chau-yuan recognizes Jin Tsung as Father Emperor but he remains an independent prince with the royal name of Uh-tsu and his kingdom is called Ni-ting. Fu-pi becomes entrusted with all Khitan matters and Fan-chung is given responsibilities with Chau-yuan. (1045) About this time by the advice of OuYang-siu, commissioners are appointed to oversee the conduct of governors and other government officials. By the advice of Fan-chung, colleges are opened throughout the empire; diplomas being earned by passing history, writing an essay on a famous person and a poetical composition. Fan-chung's and Han-k'i's reforms lead to their being accused of plotting against the throne; they, seeing the drift of things, ask to go to see the Khitans and Chau-yuan about rumored warfare between them. While gone, they along with OuYang-siu are degraded. The college examinations are abolished. (1048) Death of Chau-yuan; his one year old son succeeds with his widow as regent; against advice to take advantage of this, Jin Tsung appoints the son Lord of Hia. (1049) Nung Chih-kau leads a rebellion in Cochin China; he enters Kwang-si and commits excesses. (1053) Nung Chih-kau asks to be made governor of Kwangsi: An army under Ti-ts'ing is dispatched. Meanwhile, the Kwang-si general is defeated by Nung in the Battle of "The Pass of K'wen-lun": Ti-ts'ing has him executed. Now, by a rule, Ti-ts'ing takes Nung by surprise and defeats the enemy forces: Nung Chih-kau escapes to Yunnan (dies 1055). (1055) Accession of R8 Tao Tsung. Great flood of the Yellow River; 300,000 men open six great courses to drain off the water, but these fail and the flood spreads even farther - there is great homelessness, starvation and suffering. (1060) OuYang-siu, aided by Sung-k'i, completes a "New History of the T'ang Dynasty" in 225 volumes, superceding the history by Sieh Ku-chang. (1063-4) Death of Jin Tsung. His reign was marked by the presence of great scholars such as Ou Yang-siung, Fan Chung-yen, Han-ki, Su-sim, Su-shih, Sze-ma-kwang, Ch'and Ming-tau, Wang Ngan-shih, Chu Show-ch'ang, Lu-hwei, Lu I-kien, Fan Shun-jen, Pau-ching, Shau-yung, Sung-k'i, Chow Fun-i and others. He is succeeded by his second cousin as

S5 Ying Tsung (32 years old). After ruling for a few months he becomes very ill for four months in which Empress Dowager Ts'au acts as regent. Only by the efforts of prime minister Han-k'i does she relinquish her powers upon Ying Tsung's recovery. To offset any moves the Lord of Hia may make, a law is passed at Han-k'i's instigation requiring all families with three or more sons should give one to state service; each is branded to mark his service. (1067-8) Ying Tsung's 20 year old son succeeds as

S6 Shen Tsung. Against the opposition of prime minister Han-k'i, Wang Ngan-shih is made Prefect of Kiang-ning: Han-k'i resigns, being made a governor in Honan. (1069) Wang Ngan-shih becomes member of the Privy Council and Fu-pi prime minister. Wang Ngan-shih proposes to institute great reforms; a Board of three high officials is formed to examine the condition of the country (Summer) First Great Reform: Nationalization of commerce. The state handles the purchase (to keep prices adequate) and distribution (to prevent the poor being victimized by the rich) of produce. Su-cheh opposes this scheme because it opens the way for bribery, corruption which would only lead to greater suffering instead of eradicating it. Second Great Reform: "The State Advances to the Cultivators of the Soil"; the state makes loans to farmers at 24% interest to provide them with enough capital to produce enough to feed the armies stationed on the border. Su-cheh opposes this also stating that when time for the farmers to repay their loans comes around and they'll be unable to, much undue hardship will result. Third Great Reform: the

"Militia Enrollment Act". All of the people are divided into divisions of 10 families with a headman over them; over 50 families is an officer; over 500 is a higher officer. Every home with more than one son is bound to give one to serve the state: All of these sons are militiamen to be called up in time of war. Fourth Great Reform concerns state labor and is strenuously opposed by Sze Ma-kwang and other statesmen. Instead of compulsory labor for public works, everyone is to be taxed according to value of property owned; opposition is based upon the provision that informers are encouraged to issue fair assessments which opens the way for corruption and legal theft. (1070) Under Wang Ngan-shih's instigation another law is passed providing government payments to farmers, since the payments are compulsory with interest at 33 1/3%, it would only impoverish the poorer farmers who wouldn't be able to meet the payments. Han-k'i opposes the law and Wang threatens to resign if it isn't passed, it is and Han-k'i resigns as Viceroy of Hu-peh to become Prefect of Tai-ming. But now difficulties begin: Scholars refuse to take Wang's exams in history. His unpopular militia law is finding more and more dodgers; Shen Tsung contemplates modification and Wang states the feeling of the people are of no consequence, only the welfare of the ruler is important. (1074) The Khitans demand the Chinese cede 200 Li of territory to them. Wang councils compliance and the people are angered over the empire's dismemberment, and especially when a severe draught hits the north. 10 months later, Shen Tsung goes against Wang's hard stand (for the people are suffering under payments they cannot make under drought conditions) and suspends the laws relating to loan payments; rains fall and the people rejoice. (1082) The Hia defeat general Ch'ung-ngoh who now undertakes the raising of a fortress at Yung-loh at which a large Chinese force is attacked by the Hia "Iron Kes-trels" who rout the outer defenses; the Hia army invests Yung-loh, a storm washes away the hastily raised walls and the Chinese are defeated. News of this gives Shen Tsung a heart disease. (1085) Post-humous honors given to Mencius, he is made Duke of Tsow and his statue placed in temple of Confucius along with the images of Han-yu and Yang-hiung. Sze Ma-kwang completes his 354 volume "A Comprehensive Mirror for the Aid of Government", a history from the 23rd year of [E29] Wei Lieh of the Chow dynasty to end of the Five Dynasties. (1085)

S7 Cheh (Che) Tsung (son 10 years old). His mother, Empress Kau regent. She makes Sze Ma-kwang prime minister. They begin to dismantle Wang Ngan-shih's "Great Reforms". This year, the most hated reform, the universal militia enrollment law, is abolished. (1087) Wang Ngan-shih's laws on state aid and state labor are abolished. Sze Ma-kwang dies and Empress Kau is under pressure both from Wang's followers and the Hia to hold up any more changes. (1090) the Hia restore 149 officers and men captured at Yung-loh but demand four Shensi forts as payment; again, circumstances force Kau to accede. (1093) Death of Empress Kau: Cheh Tsung assumes the government and being weakminded assigns palace eunuchs important governmental positions. This year too, a terrible flood devastates Honan and Hupeh provinces. (1095) About this time Cheh Tsung has come under the influence of Ts'ai-king, leader of Wang's daring progressive party and begins undoing the reforms of Sze Ma-kwang; state labor is reestablished. (1100-01) Cheh Tsung divorces his queen and raises one of his concubines as queen; a censor protests and is banished to Canton. The death of his infant son causes Cheh Tsung to die of grief. Prince Twan, 11th son of Shen Tsung, becomes ruler as

S8 Hwei (Hui) Tsung (29 years old). Fond of music and antiques, he has a special museum built to hold his antique collection; spies, under the command of Ts'ai-king, scour the countryside looking for them forcing many people to hide their antiques. Wang Ngan-shih is elevated to a level even with Confucius. Sze Ma-kwang is condemned and his books burned. (1101) Accession of R9 T'ien Tsu Ti. (1103) A comet terrifies Hwei Tsung and he reverses his treatment of Wang Ngan-shih and Sze Ma-kwang. (1107?) Hwei Tsung, against the opposition of his councillors, enters into a treaty w/the Kins for the destruction of the Khi-tans: He hopes to recover the 16 districts once belonging to China. (1114) Akuta succeeds to Kin chieftan; he marches into Liau-tung and captures Ling-kang-chow. A few months later the Khitans march against Akuta and he almost destroys their army. A month later (1115) Akuta takes the title Emperor as T1 T'ai Tsu, and calls his Tartar dynasty the Kin ("Golden" Chin). This provokes chronic conflict with the Khitans. (1123) The Kin capture the Khitan capital of Hong-liang-fu and king (R9) T'ien-cha (T'ien Tsu Ti) flees to Ying-chow in Shensi which is captured but Chang-kwoh raises a rebellion against the Kin and contrary to his councillor's advice, Hwei Tsung sends aid. The rebels defeat the Kin forces and force them to retreat. But soon the rebels are defeated by the Kin and Chang-kwoh flee to the Sung capital where Hwei Tsung is forced to kill him. He is succeeded by T2 T'ai Tsung. (1124) The Kin demand from Hwei Tsung the provisions promised in their treaty. Hwei Tsung refuses and the Kin vow to conquer China. (1125) The Kin are completely victorious, crushing the Khitan army, siezing T'ien-cha, ending the Liau dynasty. King Yen-k'ing (R10 Teh Tsung) refusing to submit, establishes a weak Western Liau dynasty. Now Kin armies under generals Nien-mo-ho and Koan-li-pu march on Sung. (1126) Hwei Tsung abdicates his throne in favor of his son

S9 K'in (Ch'in) Tsung. His first act is to negotiate for peace with Koan-li-pu. K'in Tsung's proposals are rejected and the Kin army crosses the Yellow River and heads for K'ai-fung-fu. Hwei Tsung flees to Nan-king. The mandarins flee. Koan Li-pu reaches the capital and K'in Tsung capitulates, agreeing to an extremely onerous indemnity and the stipulation that the Kin ruler be titled Emperor, that T'ai-yuan in Shansi, Chin-tung and Ho-chin in Chih-li be part of Kin territory and imperial troops escort the conquerers (holding Prince K'ang, a brother of K'in Tsung) across the Yellow River. The collection of tribute begins raising widespread resentment throughout the country. Generals Ma-tsung and Ch'ung Sz-tau arrive and convince K'in Tsung that they can defeat the Kin. They try but are unsuccessful.

The Kin intensify the siege of K'ai-fung-fu. (April) Unable to take the city, the Kin begins a retreat and K'in Tsung does not allow his generals to strike. Meanwhile, Kin general Nien Mo-ho returns from successfully conquering Shensi. (June) Hwei Tsung returns to the capital but instigates no action except the dispatch of Li-kang with a small force to the frontiers to watch the Tartars. (Nov) Koan Li-pu crosses the Yellow River and invests the capital. (1127, Feb) Prince K'ang attacks with a small force but is defeated: K'in Tsung surrenders. Koan Li-pu demands a huge indemnity and the keep of all the royal family. This done he appoints Chang Pang-ch'ung vassal emperor of the Kins, abolishes the title Sung, calling it Ch'u. Prince Kang again attacks the Kin but is repulsed; he goes south and becomes emperor as

S10 Kau (Kao) Tsung (he is the ninth son of Hwei Tsung, 20 years old. Establishing the Southern Sung dynasty). (June) The Kin retire to their country taking the Sung family with them (Hwei Tsung dies 1135 and K'in Tsung dies 1156). His first act is to remove the capital from K'ai-fung-fu to Nanking, an act that alarms the people as a sure sign of weakness. Soon, Koan Li-pu dies and his suggestions that the Kin conclude peace with the Chinese is rejected. (Oct) The Kins again advance on China, siezing every town north of the Yellow River. Meanwhile, a growing nationalistic sentiment is building throughout China, ready to do battle with the Kins. (Dec) Kau Tsung flees to Yang-chow and the budding nationalistic militia (the "Red Turbans") collapses. Meanwhile, the Kins under Nien Mo-ho and Wu Shu march on K'ai-fung-fu. (1128) Chinese under Tsung-tseh march out of K'ai-fung-fu and defeat the Kin; maintaining this success the rest of the year; the Kins are driven toward Loh-yang. (1129) The Kin cross the Yellow River entering their own territory. Disorders break out in Chinese territory and Tsung-tseh puts them down yet installing and rebuilding nationalism again: He asks Kau Tsung to join his army to give it the spark needed to defeat the Kin. Kau Tsung refuses. 20 times does Tsung-tseh ask and the 20 refusals pain him to where he dies. Three times this year does Kau Tsung offer his kingdom as a fief of the Kin, but they refuse to accept. Toward the end of the year, the Kin under Nien Mo-ho again invade Sung dominions, entering Shantung province heading for Yang-chow; Kau Tsung flees to Hangchow; Nien-Mo-ho sends a fleet detachment after him. (1130) At Yang-chow, two generals demand that Kau Tsung resign his throne to his three year old son and appoint his mother regent. He does; generals Chang-tsun and Hau-shih march to Yang-chow, kill the two generals and reinstate Kau Tsung. Now, with the Kin soldiers approaching Kau Tsung flees to Lin-ngan, then Shau-hing, then Meng-chow, then Wenchow then accross the sea to the T'aichow islands where the imperial men-of-war defeat the Kin forcing them to retreat. Meanwhile, the Kin are ravaging the north; at Shen-chow in Honan, general Li-yen repulses the Kin twice before finally being overwhelmed. The Kin now return northward and are stopped at the Yangtze by the fleet of Han Shih-chung. Battle of the Yangtze - for 48 days Han Shin-chung prevents general Wuh-shu's Kins from crossing, defeating them many times but finally, through a traitor they cross avoiding the ships. (1131) The statesman Ts'in-kwei appears at court with the advice to make peace with the Kin. (1132) Kau Tsung makes Ts'in-kwei prime minister because he has a plan to end the Kin threat (though some suspect him of being a Kin agent). Soon the Kin under Wuh-shu head south: Battle of the river Wei; general Wu-kiai severely defeats the Kin. (1133) Kau Tsung returns to Hangchow. (1134) Wuh-shu again leads the Kin south. The Sung armies, led by Han-shih, Chang-tsun, Yoh-fei and others soundly defeat them, forcing them into a rout. (1135) Death of T'ai Tsung, accession of T3 Hsi Tsung. This year too, a new barbarian tribe, the Mongols, appear on the Kin frontiers instigating several minor conflicts resulting in Kin defeats. (1136) Accession of R11 Kan T'ien Hou. (1138) On the advice of Ts'in-kwei, a treaty is concluded with the Kin; they cede Honan and Shensi and keep everything else. In opposition to this, Chang-tsun and Yoh-fei resign. (May) Wuh-shu begins the evacuation of Honan. Since he arrives home first, he finds that Wu Kin-mai, son of the late Kin ruler, is involved in a plot to sieze the throne: He is siezed and killed; Wuh-shu, who disagreed with the cession of Honan and Shensi, reoccupies evacuated parts of Honan. (1139) Mongols defeat the Kin armies. (1140) Sung armies under Wu-kiai defeat the Kin in Shensi and under Yoh-fei rout them in Kiangsi where he persues them to K'ai-fung-fu where the Kin again suffer a severe defeat. Ts'in-kwei sends orders that a treaty of peace has been concluded and further persuance should cease. The Sung Army, and especially Yoh-fei, are indignant. As Yoh-fei begins returning to the capital, Wuh-shu reenters the neighborhood of K'ai-fung-fu. Kau Tsung now sees the danger and returns Yoh-fei to the front where he again defeats the Kin. Wuh-shu writes Ts'in-kwei asking him to preserve the peace by having Yoh-fei withdraw. Through palace in-trigue, Ts'in-kwei manages to have Hau-shih, who supports Yuh-fei, resigned and Yuh-fei himself killed. (1142) Accession of R12 Jen Tsung. A new Sung-Kin treaty is concluded: Shensi is to belong to the Kin and a large indemnity is paid by the Sung. The emperor is styled as a vassal of the Kin nation. Wuh-shu returns the bodies of Hwei Tsung as well as those of the queen and wife of Kau Tsung to the capital. He also allows four districts of Shensi to remain under Chinese rule and allows Kau Tsung to retain the title Emperor of China. (1147) Mongols completely defeat and humiliate the Kin under Wuh-shu; the Kin are forced to pay an endemnity and cede 37 fortified places. A treaty is signed but the Mongol chieftan Kabul Khan refuses to be recognized as Kin king, being called instead First Emperor of the Mongols. (1148) Death of Wuh-shu. He is succeeded as Kin CIC by Wan Yen-liang. (1149) Wang Yen-liang murders Hsi Tsung and he ascends the Kin throne as T4 Hai-Ling Wang. He has 70 of the late emperor's relatives killed and 30 of those of general Nien Mo-ho. This act arouses such popular dissatisfaction, he moves the Kin capital from Wu-kwuh-ch'ung to Shun-t'ien-fu in Chih-li. (1159) Appearance of the scholar Chu-hi (producer of the "Standard History of China" and "Commentaries on the Classics"). This year too,

Hai Ling Wang of Kin and the Sung begins arming for war. (1161)(July) The Kin under Hai Ling Wang advance south with 600,000 men. Battle of Lai-shih, Sung forces under comptroller Yu Yun-wen soundly defeat the Kin. Later in the year, he soundly defeats them twice more. Now a rebellion in Kin erupts; a descendant of Akuta is placed on the Kin throne as T5 She (Shih) Tsung; Ta Ting. Hai Ling Wang's reaction to this is action of such cruelty that he is killed, along with his son at K'ai-fung-fu (his capital). She Tsung desires peace with Sung - Sung demands the return of Honan: War resumes. (1162)(July) Kin armies enter Kiangnan and are driven back with great slaughter. (Sept) Kau Tsung abdicates in favor of a royal prince, a descendant of T'ai Tsu, as S11 Hian (Hsiao) Tsung (Kau Tsung dies 1187). First act is to elevate Chang-tsun to high rank and redeem memory of Yoh-fei from disgrace. This year too the Kin attack China and Chan-tsun at first defeats them but is then defeated. Negotiations begin - the Kin desire the four districts Wuh-shu ceded to Kau Tsung returned, Hian Tsung says no. Chinese ambassador to the Kin Lu Tsung-hien accedes to the Kin demands and is killed. Preparations for hostilities are renewed. (1164)(Oct) Death of Chang-tsun. (Dec) Kin again advance, capture Hwai-ngan dist, Kiangnan. Peace is concluded; the Kin do not gain Honan. (1170) prime minister Yu Yun-wen urges Hian Tsung to demand the restoration of Honan; this is opposed as China is not yet prepared for further battle, even the son of Chang-tsun opposes it. Nevertheless an embassy is sent to Shih Tsung who refuses and the two tired foes let the matter drop. (1189-90) Hian Tsung resigns his throne in favor of his third son and retires to private life (dies 1195). This year too, Shih Tsung dies and is succeeded by his grandson T6 Chang Tsung. S12 Kwang (Chang) Tsung (39 years old). He is of weak character and a slave to his queen Li who is jealous of Kwang Tsung's concubines. Soon she gathers the power of government to herself, leaving Kwang Tsung wholly out of it. (1194-5) Han-ni and Chau-ju, two remaining ministers (the others resigned in the face of Li's usurpa-tion) advise Kwang Tsung to resign in favor of his son. S13 Ning Tsung (27 years old). Han-ni now plans to elevate himself to greater power; he has Chau-ju executed after being banished to Fuchow for not cooperating with him. He has newly appointed Royal Preceptor Chu-hi dismissed for the same reason. He then has the Queen Dowager Li, who still wields considerable control of the government, to ban Chu-hi's commentaries on the classics. (1203) Han-ni, knowing the straits to which the Kin have been placed from suffering defeats from the Mongols, begins to prepare for war against them. (1204)(Dec) The Kin strengthen the garrisons at K'ai-fung-fu and ask the Emperor what is going on. Ning Tsung replies that nothing alarming is occurring and that any appearances of arming is punished by him. The Kin, satisfied, withdraw their strengthened garrisons from K'ai-fung-fu. (1205) Chinese armies under four generals advance on the Kin but are thoroughly defeated. A treaty is signed on the old terms; the Kin retire to Honan. (1206) The son of Mongol chieftan Ye Su-gai (who had been victorious over the Keraites, the Naimans, the people of Tangut or Hia, and the overthrow of Aung Khan - or Prester John - of whose capital Karakorum the Mongols occupy) Te Mu-jin is made supreme Khan of all the Mongol Tribes at a great council of Mongol chiefs at Onan Kerule: He assumes the title U1 T'ai Tsu or Genghis (Jenghis). Meanwhile, a governor in Sz-chwan turns traitor and hands over four districts to the Kin. Kin forces occupy then are driven out by Sung. After several months of fighting, the war is ended by Ning Tsung sending the head of Han-ni to the Kin. (1208) (Aug) The Kin retire from Sung territory, forced by the increasing menace of the Mongols. (1209) Death of Kin king T6 Chang Tsung: His brother T7 Wei Shau (Wei-Shao) Wang, an incompetent and useless character, succeeds; he is scorned by the Mongols. (1210) Genghis Khan and his Mongols conquer and plunder in the north and north-west Kin dominions. About this time Khitan statesman and scholar Yeh-lu-ch'u-ts'ai goes over to the Mongol court. (1211) Mongol plunder of same area continues. (1213) Hu Sha-hu murders Wei Shau Wang and T8 Suan (Hsuan) Tsung becomes Kin ruler. Now, under Yeh-luh Liu-kau, the Khitans arise in rebellion against the Kin: Yeh-luh Liu-kau resides at Tungchow and takes the title of king; he also submits his nation to Mongol rule: He becomes a Mongol noble. Meanwhile, Kau-ki murders Hu Sha-hu and becomes CIC. (1214) Suan Tsung opens negotiations for peace with the Mongols; Genghis is given a daughter of the late Wei-shau and an indemnity. But Suan Tsung, fearing the Mongols, moves his capital from Yen-king in Chihli to K'ai-fung-fu in Honan. Genghis is angered at his distrust and marches on the Kin. (1215)(July) Battle of Yen-king; Mongols under general Min-gau take the city by storm and put the defenders to the sword. (1216) Now the Kin, angry because the Sung did not aid them sends an army into their territory to punish them, but they are repelled by the Sung. (1217) Genghis sends a 10,000 man army under San-kau-pa-tu into Honan to capture K'ai-fung-fu. His way is blocked in Tungkwan pass by a Kin army, so he detours and manages to come within six or seven miles of the city. Meanwhile, the Kin amass their troops and defeat the Mon-gol force. The Kin now desire peace but the Mongols refuse and the war goes on. (1218) Genghis entrusts the conquest of all "South of the Tai-hing mountains" to Muh Hoa-li; he undertakes the subjugation of Shansi and Chihli By the end of the year the Kin beg for peace but no answer is given. Meanwhile, the Kin, to show the Sung that they are still powerful, send an army against them but Sung commander Meng Tsung-chin easily defeats them. The Mongol conquest of Kin territory goes on. (1220) Yeh-lu-ch'u-ts'ai introduces the calendar to the Mongols. (1223) Death of Muh Hoa-li and Genghis Khan returns to continue the conquest of Kin himself. (1224) Death of Suan Tsung; his son T9 Ngai (Ai) Tsung, becomes Kin ruler. (1225) Death of Ning Tsung. Prime minister Shih-mi has the real heir Kwei-ho bypassed for Kwei-seng (22 years old, a 10th generation descendent of T'ai Tsu) who becomes emperor as S14 Li Tsung. (1227) Death of Genghis Khan at Luh-p'an in Shensi while on his way to Honan. He leaves four sons

- Tuli, Chagatai, Okkodai and Juji: He bequeaths the conquest of the Tartars on his sons; Okkodai is recognized as Mongol ruler. The war with the Kin cools off somewhat. (1229) U2 Okkodai [T'ai Tsung](Ogotai) assumes the title Khan and begins heating up the war with the Kin. First he divides the territory already conquered into 10 departments To organize Mongol forces against Kin, Okkodai has his brother Tu-li and statesman Yeh-lu-ch'u-ts'ai. (1231) The Mongols begin the advance, Okkodai's army moves directly south while Tu-li's army goes through Han-chung district of Shense. Battles are fought in the Yu mountains where the Kin fail to follow up a victory. At San-fung (southwest of Yu-chow) the Kin are severely defeated. (1232) (Feb) The Mongol armies meet at K'ai-fung-fu and besiege the city. Mongol general Su Pu-tai is in charge. Later (July?) Ngai Tsung proposes an armistice which is agreed to; the Mongols withdraw to Ho-loh. (1233) (April?) Death of Tu-li adds to Mongol despair over the K'ai-fung-fu resistance. (Aug) 30 Mongols who are go-betweens between besiegers and the be-sieged are killed by a Kin general. Ngai Tsung begins preparing for a retaliation but none comes. (Sept?) The Mongols ask Li Tsung to join with them to destroy the old foes of the Sung; Li Tsung agrees if Honan can be re-stored to the Sung; the Mongols agree. Meanwhile, Ngai Tsung loses heart and faith in his people and flees to Kwei-teh losing much of his rear guard to the Mongols: Now the allied siege resumes in earnest. (Nov?) Ts'ui-li, defender of K'ai-fung-fu, opens negotiations with Su Pu-tai for a gentlemanly surrender. Yeh-lu-ch'u-ts'ai convinces Okkodai to not customarily slaughter the city's defenders, but allow them to live. Okkodai agrees and K'ai-fung-fu is delivered to the Mongols. Now Ngai Tsung flees to Ts'ai-chow; the allied armies follow. Ngai Tsung sends an ambassador to Li Tsung beseeching him to join the Kin and not the Mongols, warning that after the Kin, the Sung will next fall before them. (Dec) Ts'ai-chow is besieged. Ngai Tsung resigns his throne in favor of Ch'eng-lin who becomes T10 Mo Ti. A few days later the city is taken and the Kin dynasty comes to an end. (1234) There is much joy in Hangchow over the fall of Kin. (July) Sung forces enter K'ai-fung-fu, they attack and capture Lohyang then take Tung-kwan pass. Later, the Mongols, surprised at Chinese swiftness, march against them, defeating them here and there. (1235)(Feb) Li Tsung sends 15,000 men under Meng-king to K'ai-fung-fu and ambassadors to the Mongols - Chinese ownership of Honan is agreed to in their treaty but the Mongols say that doesn't matter - if peace is desired, hand over Honan: Five Mongol armies march against the Chinese; first under Ku-tan, a son of Okkodai, to Sz-chwan; second to Kiangnan; third to Hu-kwang; fourth under Man-gu, to west Honan; fifth to Korea. Ku-tan is at first successful in Sz-chwan but Sung armies under Meng-kung manage to defeat and drive him out. (1236) Fighting goes on. This year Yeh-lu-ch'u-ts'ai manages to have the Mongols adopt a system of paper money. (1237) Fighting continues with the Sung holding the balance of success: The Mongols keeping away from Meng-kung. Meanwhile, Okkodai introduces reforms to assimilate the Mongol rule to that of China: Chinese weights and measures are adopted and the issuance of paper money is begun. (1238) Meng-kung forces the Mongols to evacuate Kiangnan. (1239) Mongols again advance but suffer three crushing defeats by Meng-kung. Meanwhile, Okkodai under the influence of Yeh-lu-ch'u-ts'ai makes arrangements for better government of the conquered territory: He invites Chinese scholars into his court. (1241) Death of Okkodai. He had desired Shih La-wun (eldest son of his fourth son) to succeed him but queen T'u-li-ki-na disallows this and against the advice of Yeh-lu-ch'u-ts'ai acts as regent of the Mongol kingdom. Meanwhile Mongol ambassadors to China are murdered by a border general; Mongol forces enter Sz-chwan and capture Ch'ungking and other places. (1243) Death of Yeh-lu-ch'u-ts'ai; queen T'u-li-ki-na's rule worsens. (1246) A great council of the Mongol nation is held and it decided that the eldest son of Okkodai (40 years old) become emperor as U3 Ting Tsung (Ku-yuk)[Kuyak]. Soon Meng-kung dies and Kia Sz-tau is appointed CIC. (1248) Death of Ku-yuk, his queen becomes regent. (1251) U4 Hsien Tsung (Man-gu)[Mangu], eldest son of Tu-li is made Mongol Khan. He seizes Shih La-wun (who was supported to be Khan) and his followers and places them under restraint. He appoints his brother Kublai commander of the forces to subjugate Honan. Kublai's guide and advisor is one Yau-chu who advises him that in order to gain the hearts of the people he rules, he must; cultivate virtue; be studious; respect men of superior intelligence; love your relatives; reverence Heaven; love your people; delight in god and avoid disloyal advisors. (1253) Man-gu adds Shensi to Mongol territory. He now begins plans for rehabilitating the countryside devastated by warfare. Hulaka, son of Tu-li, sets out for the conquest of Persia. Man-gu subjugates some aboriginies in his own district and with lieutenant Vriang Kadai, compels the submission of the three fiercest tribes of Yunnan to the Khan - others submit: Ta-li and four other prominent towns are captured. (1257) A rumor spreads that Man-gu resents Kublai; the brothers settle the problem amicably. (1258) With Arikbuga in charge of the capital, Kublai heads for Honan and Man-gu for Sz-chwan. There he is slowed considerably by two Chinese armies but captures Yun-chow. (1259) Man-gu besieges Ho-chow, commanded by Wang-kien; after six months Man-gu dies and the Mongols retreat to Kara Korum. Meanwhile, Kublai has captured several cities in Kiangsi, alarming Li Tsung: He sends Kia Sz-tau against Kublai but the Chinese general privately proposes peace terms that are ignored. Soon, news of Man-gu's death and an increase in the promised indemnity by Kia Sz-tau and news from Kara Korum that Arikbuga is plotting against him causes Kublai to accept the Chinese terms and marches North. Kia Sz-tau attacks them in the rear with little success. (1260) Reign title; Ching Ting. At Hwan-chow

U. The YUAN (Mongol) DYNASTY

U5 Shih Tsu (Kublai), is proclaimed Great Khan. He sends ambassadors to Li Tsung protesting Kia Sz-tau's actions

but Kia Sz-tau has them intercepted and killed. Kublai vows revenge. (1261)(Nov) Kublai defeats his brother Arikbuga's forces and is acknowledged Supreme Khan. Arikbuga is given a government position of rank. (1262) An embassy from Cochin China offers submission to Kublai. Meanwhile, a Mongol lieutenant of Shantung and parts of Kiangnan, Li-tan, transfers his allegiance to Li Tsung. He then massacres Mongol garrisons throughout and fortifies Tsi-nan and Tsing-chow. Mongol armies defeat him all around and besiege him at Tsi-nan. Four months later the city is taken, Li-tan killed and Shantung is once again Mongol territory. Meanwhile, Liu-ching, governor of Lu-chow in Sz-chwan, goes over to the Mongols. (1263) Preparations are made to move the Mongol capital to Peking; construction of palaces, ancestral halls, etc. (1264) Kublai Khan and all the great offices of the Mongol state move to their new capital - Peking. (Dec) Death of Li Tsung. (1265) His nephew, 43 years old succeeds him as S15 Tu Tsung. First act is to issue a general amnesty and raise Kia Sz-tau to supreme counselor. Meanwhile, Kublai is preparing to conquer Sung do minions. (1268) On the advice of Liu-ching, the Mongol army under Ashu, constructs a fleet and the combined army and navy besieges Siang-yang - along with its companion city Fan-ching - under the command of Su-wun, on the Han river in Hupeh. (1269) Mongol reinforcements arrive and the siege of Siang-yang goes on. (1270) The siege of Siang-yang is drawn tighter, but still the city resists. Meanwhile, Kia Sz-tau assures Tu Tsung that information about Mongol withdrawal is true and Siang-yang has been saved! (1271) The siege goes on but it is beginning to tell on the city. Meanwhile, Kublai Khan names his dynasty the Yuan, which means First or Original. (1272) Finally Kia Sz-tau sees that his traitorous policy can go on no longer; he sends an army under Li-ting to relieve Siang-yang. Li-ting accepts the two brothers - Chang-shun and Chang-kwei - to take 100 boats and break the Mongol blockade. This they do (Chang-shun is killed) bringing supplies to the beleaguered cities. Meanwhile, Uighur general Alihaiyai informs Kublai of cannon in the West that are superior to the ones now being used; Kublai writes to his nephew in Persia and the guns are sent: Soon their superior fire-power brings the conquest, though costly for the Mongols, of Fan-ching. Now the Mongols turn their whole power against Siang-yang. (1273)(Apr) Kublai and Su-wun come to an agreement; Siang-yang is surrendered and the defenders are not harmed; Su-wun is made commander of the two cities. (1274) Kublai Khan sends a 300 vessel fleet with 15,000 men to demand submission from Japan, but the islanders soundly defeat them. (Sept) Death of Tu Tsung. (1275) His son, 14 years old, succeeds as S16 Kung Ti. (1276) The Mongol army of 200,000, commanded by Bayan (returned from Persia), Ashu, Alihaiyai, Liu-ching, Lu-wun and others moves south. Li-ching marches on Yang-chow in Kiangnan while Bayan takes Wuchang and leaves Alihaiyai there with a garrison. Soon Hanyang and Hankow fall: Kia Sz-tau leads a hastily assembled army of 130,000 against the Mongols, along with a large fleet of junks. He entrenches at Wuhu and informs Bayan of his desire to discuss terms; Bayan turns him down. Bayan captures Chihchow after its commander Chau Man-fa and his wife commit suicide after onr officer opened the gates for the Mongols. Now Kia Sz-tau sends his 2,500 ship fleet against the Mongols but they are disastrously defeated, mainly by superior Mongol cannon. Bayan captures Jau-chow; Kia Sz-tau recommends Kung Ti flee but the Empress-Dowager and council oppose this: Now Wen Tien-siang arrives from Kiangsi with 10,000 men and another general with 3,000 for the defence of Kung Ti. Soon, Kia Sz-tau is put to death. Bayan siezes Nanking in the throes of a pestilence; taking pity on the starving inhabitants, he distributes provisions among them. Now Kublai sends Bayan orders to quit, but Bayan tells Kublai that its now or never; Kublai agrees. (April) Bayan captures Ch'ang-chow and Suchow. Meanwhile, Kublai sends ambassadors of peace to Kung Ti, but Sung soldiers kill them, dashing all hopes of saving the government. Kublai orders Bayan and Ashu to Peking to discuss the state of affairs in China now Sung armies begin experiencing a few victories: (July) Liu-sz recaptures Ch'ang-chow but soon Bayan returns and lays siege to it. (Aug) Ch'ang-chow again falls to the Mongols. Now the Mongol army is divided into four commands; Bayan at Nanking, Ashu besieging Yang-chow; Alihaiyai in Hunan carrying all before him and the fourth in Kiang-si. Panic in Hangchow as an army is hastily assembled. Bayan nears Hangchow; peace proposals are sent by both sides but treachery and messenger murder angers each side against the other. Kung Ti's two brothers flee to Wenchow. Bayan siezes Hangchow along with Kung Ti and family. Prime minister Wen Tien-siang escapes, going to Wenchow where Kung Ti's oldest brother is proclaimed emperor as S17 Twan (Tuan) Tsung (8 years old) (Kung Ti and family are exiled in Peking). His court moves to Foochow; his mother is regent. Three armies are equipped; first to recover Shau-wu in Fohkien; second to attack Jau-chow in Kiangsi and the third to capture Cheh-tung in Chehkiang. But the Mongols are successful in Kwangtung province and defeat the Chinese at Shau-wu in Fohkien. General Chang Shih-kieh sails for Chin-chow but the commandant there has declared for the Mongols; he anchors at Suatow. By the end of the year, Alihaiyai has captured all of the large towns of Kiang-si. (1277)(Jan) Wen Tien-siang recaptures Canton and Hing-hwa. Chang Shin-kieh recaptures Shau-wu. (Aug) The Mongols regain their January losses, subjecting Hing-wa to an extremely bloody slaughter. The Mongol advance forces the royal household to flee again, now to Tung-au in Kwangtung province. They are shipwrecked at Sang-chow island, where Twan Tsung becomes ill. Meanwhile the Mongols attack the Burmese and advance in Sz-chwan. (1278) Now all of the Sung empire except the corner occupied by the emperor's family is in Kublai Khan's hands. Death of Twan Tsung. Tu Tsung's youngest son, 8 years old, is raised to the throne as S18 Ti Ping. The imperial household is moved from Wang-chow island to Yai-shan which has a good harbor: Chang Shih-kieh and Luh Siu-fu move their ships and men there. (1279) Mongol general Chang Fung-fan moves

his fleet to blockade Yai-shan. Chang Shih-kieh prepares to do battle, he chains his ships across the harbor; frustrating the Mongol's attempts to enter the harbor. Chang Shih-kieh resorts to diplomacy to no avail. Meanwhile, Wen Tien-siang is captured, he is now urged to convince the Sung to surrender. Soon, the blockade begins telling on the besieged. (1280) The Mongol fleet enters the harbor of Yai-shan, defeating the Chinese fleet; Chang Shih-kieh manages to escape with 16 ships. Lu Sin-fu drives his wife and family into the sea, then with Ti Ping on his shoulders, jumps after them; all are drowned: The dynasty of Sung comes to an end. Meanwhile, Chang Shih-kieh goes to Wang-chow and gives the queen-dowager the news and to urge further resistance; she refuses and kills herself. Chang Shih-kieh sails to Cambodia asking for aid but is refused. He now rendezvous at Hai-ling island and then sails for an attack on Canton. A typhoon destroys his little fleet.

Kublai becomes Emperor of China and Mongolia. First act is to send an investigative force to the source of the Yellow River and its course to devise measures to avoid its frequent devastating floods. Toward the end of the year he sends ambassadors to Japan demanding them to acknowledge him Lord Paramount of Japan: They kill his ambassadors. (1281) Kublai orders an immense fleet gathered and under admirals Aleuhan and Hoan Wen-hu sails for Japan. It arrives safely but a storm destroys the ships. The Japanese slaughter all of the men except those from Fohkien whom they enslave (the Japanese have been trading with the people of Fohkien and have developed friendships with them). Preparations are begun for another invasion of Japan. (1282) Kublai, a Buddhist, orders an examination of Taoist writings to find any truth in them: It is reported that all are corrupt except the Tau-teh (The Way of Virtue); he orders all copies of the corrupt burned. Meanwhile, Wang-chu, chief officer of Shang-tu city has Kublai's minister of state, Ahmed, killed because of his corruption: Kublai has Wang-chu killed then Marco Polo informs Kublai of Ahmed's corruption and Kublai confiscates his family's holdings to the state. Kublai asks Wen Tien-siang why the rumors of Chinese discontent, the captive general explains it is popular refusal to submit to him; Kublai asks Wen Tien-siang to join his government, he refuses and at the captives request, Kublai has him killed. Construction of a Grand Canal begins (completed 1289) to carry rice from Kiang-nan to Peking. (1283) Nesperadin is sent to Yunnan to stop Burmese encroachments there: Battle of Yung-chang plain; after setbacks, Nesperadin defeats the Burmese force, capturing many elephants. Now Nesperadin, having informed Kublai that the conquest of Burma would be easy, overcomes them at Bamo; Battle of Male (hill), the Burmese are routed. The Mongols advance on the capital Tai-kung (or Ta-gaung) which is eventually taken. After plundering, the Mongols return northward. Meanwhile, general Soto is sent to resubmit the Cambodians to Mongol rule (they had recently revoked their loyalty) and is ignominiously defeated. (1284) Sato and Kublai's ninth son T'o-hoan again march on Cambodia by way of Annam, suspected of supporting Cambodia. (July) The Annamese oppose the Mongols at the river Fu-liang but are defeated. (Aug-Sept) The heat during the Mongol march through Annam takes its toll and the Cambodians easily send them packing in defeat. Kublai vows revenge, but his ministers convince him to give up, likewise the plan (now into its third year) to invade Japan is scrapped. (1285) Death of Chin-kin, the heir-apparent. (1287) Another expedition is sent to secure Annam under Kublai's ninth son T'o-hoan and general Apatsi. In 17 engagements, the Mongols are victorious. Now the Annamese lay low to allow Summer heat to take its toll; T'o-hoan, against the advice of Apatsi, allows this to happen due to negotiations. Soon the Annamese fall on them, Apatsi dies and T'o-hoan and his remnant army flees. Angered, Kublai makes T'o-hoan stay at Yang-chow. (1288) Kublai orders Kung Ti, the last of the Sung, to become a Buddhist priest in a Tibetan monastery. (1291) Kublai grants the mother of Kung-Ti 60 acres of land tax-free and makes her a Buddhist nun. (1292-3) Plagues of locusts ravage the northern areas. Floods in Kiangnan do considerable damage. Kublai attempts to aid the distressed by issuing food from the royal granaries. (1294) Death of Kublai; through Bayan's influence, Timor the Third of Chin-kin becomes emperor as

U7 Ch'eng Tsung. First act is to issue a command ordering both Mongols and Chinese to hold the memory of Confucius in highest reverence. Annam sends submission in the form of tribute. (1297) About this time a Burmese chief Papesifu murders the Burmese king and establishes himself as ruler. He enters Yunnan but submits to Ch'eng Tsung on the advance of a Mongol force. The Mongols soon suffer from the heat and at Battle of Sung-liang are severely defeated and retreat. Now Kweichow raises the standard of rebellion and city after city joins. (1300) After having reduced the land-tax to 1/30 the existing one, Ch'eng Tsung sends special commissioners out to examine the conduct of the mandarins. (1304) Ch'eng Tsung again sends out his commissioners and 18,473 mandarins are found guilty of bribery and oppression and are dismissed. (1305-6) Severe earthquakes strike T'ai-yuan and Ta-tung in Shansi. Also about this time death of Ch'eng Tsung's son and heir Teh-siu. (1308) Death of Ch'eng Tsung. Prime minister A-hu-tai plots the elevation of Anan-ta, prince of Ngansi and makes queen-dowager the queen regent. Another official disappearing, siezes the treasury and sends for the brothers Ai-yu-li and Hai-shan, great grandson of Kublai. Ai-yu-li arrives at Peking, orders the death of A-hu-tai and the queen regent and ascends the throne as U7 Wu Tsung. He orders the Confucian classic on "Filial Piety" translated into the Mongol language and copies given to all of his relatives to better comprehend the people they rule. He also commands the issuance of funds to enable parents who were forced to sell their children during the floods of Honan, Shan-tung and Chihli and the earthquakes in Shansi to buy them back. (1311-12) Death of Wu Tsung; he is succeeded by his brother as U8 Jen Tsung. A scholarly individual, he orders the examinations for Chin-sz (Third degree) be held triennially in order to encourage higher study of literature. He also issues a decree ordering eunuchs can no longer be appointed

to any civil post. Also, any mandarin convicted of bribery should be branded on the face. (1315) Jen Tsung banishes Wu Tsung's son Ho-shih to Yunnan as Prince Chow then to area north of Gobi desert; this to secure the succession for his son Shu-teh-pa-ty. (1318) About this time a great fire destroys 23,300 homes in Yangchow.

U9 Ying Tsung (son). He appoints the corrupt and unscrupulous Temudar prime minister: He has the loyal court ministers put to death and oppresses the people with exactions. (1322) Death of Temudar; Pai-tsu is made prime minister. Ying Tsung confiscates his property, refuses posthumous hymns and puts his followers to death. (1323) Ying Tsung orders an investigation of official's conduct, the censor Tieh-shih, fearing this plots the emperor's death. (Sept) Ying Tsung and Pai-tsu, while travelling to the summer residences at Shang-tu are killed by the plotters The plotters send north of the Gobe for Yesun Timor, a great grandson of Kublai who (1324) becomes emperor as U10 Tai (T'ai) Ting Ti. First act is to have Tieh-shih and his conspirators killed. He recalls the second son of Wu Tsung from Canton to reside at Nanking as Prince of Hwai. (1325) To prevent further murders of sovereigns by their ministers he issues an edict specifying no high court official can have any control over the troops. (1328) (Aug) Death of Tai Ting Ti at Shang-tu. The prime minister siezes the successor, Tai Ting Ti's nine year old son (U11 Yu Chu) and his supporters, and places them in prison. He now offers Prince Hwai in Nanking the throne; Prince Hwai hurries to Peking, has his opposition killed and sends a force to Siang-tu to sieze the nine year old emperor who is killed. Feeling unable to wait for his elder brother, Prince Hwai becomes emperor as U12 Ming Tsung. This displeases Ho-shih, Ming Tsung's brother, who soon sets out from north of Ho-ling in Mongolis for Peking. (1330)(Sept) The two brothers meet at Shang-tu and profess friendship yet three days later Ming Tsung is found dead. His brother Ho-shih becomes emperor as U13 Wen Tsung. First act is a general amnesty. In another act, he invests Mencius with the title of Duke Second Stage. While still at Shang-tu, the Grand Lama of Tibet visits him; any differences of protocol that presented themselves between the two leaders of Confucianism are ironed out by Lu-ch'-ing, president of the Hanlin Academy: Each is considered an equal. (1332-3) Death of Wen Tsung: His widow sets aside her infant son and proclaims the second son, 7 year old, of Ming Tsung, U14 Ning Tsung, emperor. A month later he dies and she raises her older brother Tsing Kiang to the throne as U15 Shun Ti. He is at Kwangsi. It is six months before he enters the capital and is recognized as Emperor. To allay opposition to his accession, it is agreed that on his death the son of the queen-dowager shall succeed him. Shun Ti hands over all authority and responsibility to his prime minister Bayan. Floods wrack Peking, Shansi and Honan. (1334) Earthquakes and landslides alarm the people as to the reliability of their government. Shun Ti issues an edict ordering no maiden over 16 shall marry until selections have been made to complement the royal harem. Bayan discovers a plot to dethrone Shun Ti; the queen's brothers are implicated and he has them killed. Shun Ti ignores his queen's pleas and Bayan has her killed. (1335-8) Famines and earthquakes plague China. Rebellions flare up. A severe rebellion in Changchow prefecture near Amoy is put down by the people who fear Bayan's revenge. (1339) Bayan has a Mongol prince killed and two others, allied to the emperor, banished without the permission of Shun Ti. He also appoints his nephew To-tu to the command of Peking as colonel of the guards. (1340) Bayan's suite has by this time become larger than the emperor's. To-tu soon convinces Shun Ti that Bayan can only bring him harm; Shun Ti has Bayan exiled to Kiang-si where he soon dies. Shun-ti now begins to act more independently: Has his father's murderers killed; Wen Tsung's ancestral tablet removed; exiles the queen-dowager to Tung-gnan and her son the crown prince to Korea. To-tu is made prime minister. (1341-2) Rebellions become more prevalent as the Mongol hold over China is slipping. (1343) Publication of the histories of the Liau-kin and Sung dynasties. (1345) Shun Ti issues an edict forbidding the manufacture of spirits due to the prevalence of famine and shortage of grain. (1348) Ex-salt dealer and now pirate Fang Kwoh-chin is defeated while ravaaging the coast; he flees to Foochow. He collects another fleet and sails against his enemy and defeats them, as a peace he is given (by his demand) the position of a small mandarin. Soon he tries this again - becomes pirate and attacks Wenchow. Toward the end of the year, the Yellow River floods and commissioner Ku-lu is sent to report on the disaster. (1351) Ku-lu hands in his report, stating the Yellow River must flow into the Gulf of Pechili as it did during the Sung dynasty else further inundations will occur. To-tu concurs. Shun Ti sends another commissioner, Ch'eng-tsun, who reports that the people of Shan-tung, Chihli and Honan are universally opposed to Ku-lu's plan (high taxes needed and what's to be done with the workers when completed?). To-tu has Ch'eng-tsun appointed salt commissioner in Ho-chien, Chihli. (May) All arrangements for the construction of the Yellow River's new course are complete: Ku-lu is superintendant of works and 170,000 workmen begin by opening at a place north of Hwang-ling (to go through Kwei-leh to the sea). (Nov) This branch is completed and ready for ships. (1352)(Jan) The banks of the new opening are stiffened to withstand the flow. Meanwhile, revolutions, especially in Kiangnan are breaking out against the higher taxes and oppressive manner in which they are collected. More ominous are the rise of secret societies, one being the "White Lily" under Hai-shan: They adopt the red scarf as their mark: Im-perial forces kill Hai-shan but his son Han-lin continues the rebellion and is very successful. Other successful leaders of revolts are Li-urh and Siu-hwui. Meanwhile, a large Mongol fleet attacks Fang Kwoh-chin who thoroughly defeats them, captures the admiral and forces him to report to the emperor that the pirate is a loyal citizen; Fang Kwoh-chin is made a high mandarin. Later in the year imperial forces rout Liu-fuh' forces and the general killed but revolutionary spirit is pervading the land. Siu-hwui proclaims himself emperor and captures Han-yang and other cities. (1353) Shun Ti gives orders to fortify

cities against the rebels; all the descendants of Kung Ti are banished to Sa-chow. Meanwhile, Fang Kwoh-chin throws off his allegiance and returns to piracy. The military commander Kwo Tz-hing becomes leader of a new rebel movement. Mongol general To-tu manages to defeat Li-urh and retake Ho-chow, but this success is offset by the appearance of more rebel groups. At the close of the year, Chu Yuan-chang, son of Shih-chin of Fung-yang northeast of Ngan hwui province (he entered a Buddhist monastery when his family all died of a plague) now leaves the monastery and joins Kwo Tz-hing. (1354)(Autumn) Battle of Yangchow; Mongol general To-tu defeats a new rebel force under Chang-shaw; then, from intrigue engineered by the censor Ho-ma, Shun Ti has To-tu exiled (he soon dies). Meanwhile, famine of such extent that cannibalism is practiced, afflicting the area about the capital, is completely ignored by Shun Ti and his court who are engaged in lavish feasts and rich plays. (1355)(July) Death of Kwo Tz-hing; Chu Yuan-chang becomes leader of his large rebel force. Crossing the Yang-tze, he easily captures Nanking. He now calls himself the Duke of Wu and begins reorganizing the territory he now holds gaining the confidence and support of the people. Other rebel leaders join him; Su-ta, Li-shan and Ch'ang. Meanwhile Ho-ma plots with the crown prince the deposition of Shun Ti; the plot is discovered and both are banished. (1357) Han-lin attacks Shang-chow but is defeated by imperial troops. (April) The rebel Chang-sz prepares to take Nanking. Chu Yuan-chang sends Su-ta who defeats Chang-sz and pursues him to his capital of Ch'ang-chow. Su-ta defeats Chang-sz's brother; negotiations begin then breakdown and Su-ta storms the city, taking it. Chang-sz flees to the Mongols and surrenders to them. Soon Su-ta captures Ling-kwoh and Yang-chow. Meanwhile, two more rebel leaders appear in Sz-chwan; Ch'en Yiu-liang calls himself King of Shuh, and Ming-yuh as King of Han. Han-lin tries to capture K'ai-fung-fu but is unsuccessful. (1358) Han-lin sends a large force under general Man-kwei into Shantung; Tsi-nan Fu and Tientsin are captured and the army heads for Peking. The alarmed emperor sends out orders to gather an army which quickly gathers and defeats Man-kwei who retreats to Shantung. Han-lin captures K'ai-fung-fu and Shang-tu, Kublai's old summer residence, razing the place. Meanwhile, Chu Yuan-chang gains the allegiance of the pirate Fang Kwoh-chin. As Chu is now the most powerful rebel leader in China, Wen-chow, Tai-chow and Ningpo declare ready to be his. (1359)(July) Ch'en-yiu captures Sin-chow in Kiang-si. (1360) Ch'en-yiu attempts the capture of Nanking but fails, being attacked instead by a double-crossing traitor. Meanwhile, Mongol prince Ali-kwun, eighth generation descendant of Og-dai, advances on Peking claiming Shun Ti's rule has been lax and should be held by one more competent; soon the imperial troops defeat Ali-kwun, he flees to Shung-tu. (1361) Shun Ti sends 100,000 men against Ali-kwun who is captured; Shun Ti has him executed. Meanwhile, Chu Yuan-chang attacks and captures Kiang-chow in Kiang-si, but Ch'en-yiu manages to escape to Wu-chang. Meanwhile Ming-yuh of Sz-chwan is extending his holdings into Yunnan. (1362) The queen of Shun Ti who's family is Korean, induces her husband to send an army into Korea to put down the ruthless king who has had a number of her family put to death. Battle of the Yalu River; imperial troops are severely defeated and Korea is free of Mongol domination. (1363) Ch'ang-shih attacks Han-lin at Shen-chow; Han-lin asks Chu Yuan-chang for aid; Ch'ang-shih captures the town then Chu captures the town and Han-lin joins forces with him. (Aug) Ch'en-yiu besieges Hung-tu; Chu Yuan-chang is asked to defeat him. (Rest of year) Battles of Poyang Lake; first - Ch'en-yiu defeats Chu; second - Chu Yuan-chang, taking advantage of a storm, defeats Ch'en-yiu's forces who escape to an island which is blockaded: Soon, famine and battles see Ch'en-yiu and eldest son die. Ch'en's general takes the second son to Wuchang where he is proclaimed King of Han. Chu sends his army there and Wuchang is besieged. A few months later Chu returns with reinforcements and Wuchang capitulates. (1364)(Spring and later) Crown prince Tusin falsely accuses prince Polo Timour of Shansi and others of plotting to depose Shun Ti. They deny but Shun Ti believes and exiles Polo. Instead, Polo Timour leads his forces toward Peking; Battle of Ku-yang; Polo defeats the crown prince who flees to Zebal; Polo reaches Peking, explains the fake conspiracy and the two conspirators who had influenced the crown prince are executed. Polo returns to Shan-si. (1365) The crown prince marches 100,000 men against Polo Timour and Prince Tusin. Again Polo defeats the imperial troops and marches on Peking. Shun Ti could make no meaningful reply. Polo is made prime minister and given all executive power. Shun Ti's son raises an army against Polo but is defeated. Soon, Polo earns much ill-will by his arrogance and misconduct; the emperor consents to his death; Polo is killed and (Oct) the crown prince returns to Peking. (1366)(March) The Yellow River floods, hitting Tsi-nan Fu especially hard. The court of Shun Ti, however, does nothing, concerned more with the successes of Chu Yuan-chang who has captured Hochow, Hangchow, Shauhing, successfully sieging Suchow (ridding himself of rival Chang-shih who commits suicide at Nan-king) thereby gaining Kiangnan. Also the death of Ming-yuh eliminates another rebel rival. Chu now organizes three armies; one to operate in the south, one in the northern provinces and the third of 250,000 under Su-ta to march through Shan-tung to Peking, which amounts more to a triumphal march than a campaign. Meanwhile, Fang Kwoh-chin, who has joined the Mongols is defeated; Wenchow and Taichow are wrested from him. Fang gives up; Yen-ping, Kien-ning and Fu-chow are given up. Soon, Su-ta enters K'ai-fung-fu and Chu's rebel forces have taken 34 cities in Kwang-tung province and seized the capital of Kwang-si. (1367) Urged by his lieutenants, Chu Yuan-chang takes the title emperor as Hung Wu and calls his dynasty the Great Ming. His wife Ma Chi is made Empress. Hung Wu now joins Su-ta at K'ai-fung-fu Su-ta marches on Peking, Shun Ti and his court flee northward Su-ta easily takes the capital. Now Hung Wu enters Peking; the Mongol Yuan dynasty comes to an end and 40 year old Hung Wu becomes emperor as

V. The MING DYNASTY

V1 T'ai Tsu. He establishes his capital at Nanking with K'ai-fung-fu the northern capital. He begins reducing unnecessary expenditure; reduces number of royal household ladies, forbids use of public monies except only for popular benefit. Common schools are reestablished. The Hanlin academy has its status rebolstered. Libraries are established in all provincial capitals and large cities. He assigns a commission of eminent academy members to write a history of the last dynasty. A hall is built in Peking to honor his generals and seven scholars that were of service to him during the revolution. Meanwhile, Su-ta, who has pursued the Mongols, forces Mongol Prince K'u-k'u Timour into Kansuh, thereby gaining all of Shansi for Ming. (1369) A Japanese force lands on Shantung coast, ravages the country and withdraws. A Mongol ex-prime minister advances with 10,000 men on Peking but is forced to withdraw. (April) Su-ta crosses the Yellow River and attacks Li in Fung-siang: Li abandons the city and flees to Lin-tau. Su-ta besieges Lin-tau and captures Li. Meanwhile, general Ch'ang Yu-ch'un battles Shun Ti by attacking T'ai-ping, siezing the city but Shun Ti escapes to Ho-lin in Mongolia. Two months later, Shun Ti sends an army to Ta-tung which is easily defeated with deaths of over 10,000. Later, Su-ta finishes the pacification of Shensi; the ruler of Korea sends tribute to T'ai Tsu and is confirmed as king of Korea; Fang-yang, in Nganhwui, is designated central capital of the empire. (1370) Mongol Prince K'u-k'u besieges Lanchow under the command of Chang-wum. Yu-kwang, commander of Kung-ch'ang, rushes to his assistance but is captured, he succeeds, however, in allowing Chang-wun who holds out until Su-ta with lieutenant Li-wun, arrives but K'u-k'u has retreated to river Ch'au-url; there Su-ta soundly defeats him, K'u-k'u barely escapes. Li-wum now besieges Ying-ch'ang where Shun Ti had lodged upon taking the city it was found that Shun Ti was dead; all of his family are taken prisoner - only the eldest son escapes. (Summer) Northern China suffers a terrible drought. T'ai Tsu does his duty and the drought ends. Later Su-ta returns triumphantly to Nanking. (1371) Fuyuta sets out for the pacification of Szchwan via Kiaichow which is captured, then Wenchow, Mienchow, Kweichow and with much difficulty, Chen-tu. (1372)(June) T'ai Tsu summons Mongol prince Liang to submit; prince K'u-k'u urges him not to. Su-ta and Li-wum are sent against K'u-k'u without much success. Several years of warfare are begun, with China holding cultivated areas and Mongols holding the deserts. (1378) T'ai Tsu informs all mandarins of proper methods of government. He issues an edict on qualifications for public office (high character, intelligence and filial and sub-missive to superiors). He puts a stop to public literary exams. Soon he appoints a commission to draw up the laws of the new dynasty. (1374) A Japanese force descends on the coasts of China; Wu-ching is sent after them and manages to capture some at the Loochow islands. (1375-80) Period of comparative peace except incursions by prince K'u-k'u and repulsions by Ming armies. (1381) T'ai Tsu sends Su-ta and Fuyuta against K'u-k'u, they defeat him and drive the Mongols into the wilds. Now Fuyuta is sent against prince Liang in Yunnan, after a three month compaign, the prince is defeated (he flees into Burma where he commits suicide) and Yunnan comes under Ming control. Ma He, the son of a rural official, is castrated and made a eunuch of the court of Zhu Di, Pince of Yen. Later in the year, against the protests of his ministers, T'ai Tsu begins employing Buddhist priests in his great councils and popular government. (1382)(Sept) After warning her husband against having faith in idols, T'ai Tsu's wife dies. After the funeral, T'ai Tsu gives each dignitary a bonze as their confidential advisor. (1385) Death of Su-ta at the beginning of the year and at the end of the year the Burmese renounce allegiance to China and invade Yunnan, defeating Ming forces with great loss. (1386) Mongols under Nakochu invade and ravage Manchuria. Fuyuta is sent with 200,000 men along with gen Lan-yu who manages to capture a great part of the Mongol force. Now Fuyuta pursues Oyu-sili, last remaining son of Shun Ti, to put a final end to Mongol claims on China. He reaches Payu-url but Oyu-sili has fled. Finally he reaches the prince, defeats his forces and sends the royal family to Nanking. Oyu-sili having escaped, is murdered by one of his officers. (1388) An imperial force is sent against the Burmese who are defeated with the loss of 40,000; Burma pays tribute and acknowledges Chinese supremacy. (1390) Falsly accused of plotting rebellion (because his soldiers were taking advantage of his age and abusing the people), Li-shan is put to death and his son banished. This is reversed when it is discovered the info was false. (1391) About this time T'ai Tsu sends his son to examine the feasibility of moving the capital to Peking but the son dies. T'ai Tsu now aims to raise his fourth son, prince of Yen, as heir but vigorous opposition settles the matter by the appointment of his grandson. Jealous, the prince of Yen accuses 60 or 70 of T'ai Tsu's old comrads-in-arms of plotting rebellion; the suspicious T'ai Tsu has Lan-yu and many others with their families killed. T'ai Tsu now orders all military weapons be handed over to the government else holders will be guilty of high treason and treated as rebels. Soon, Fuyu-ta and 11 other officers are put to death. (1395) T'ai Tsu publishes a treatise on 13 different subjects to be of service to his children in government: All administrators are required to master its contents and carry out its requirements under threat of punishment. (1396) Prince Yen enters Mongol territory and suppresses a great enemy force that threatened China. (1398) A rebellion in Kwei-chow of the aboriginies of the soil is put down by two of the emperor's sons. A rebellion in Burma sends its king into China seeking protection; imperial troops enter Burma, put to death the traitor and reestablish the king. (1399) T'ai Tsu becomes ill. He leaves a will noting his grandson as heir and forbidding his sons to attend the funeral and then (July) dies.

V2 Hwei (Hui) Ti (16 years old). President of the Board of War advises Hwei Ti to order spreading his troops about the empire to reduce the possibility of rebellion; Hwei Ti refuses. His two corrupt advisors Tsi-tai and Wang Tze-ting have Hwei Ti's uncle prince Chow reduced to a common citizen. Prince Yen, with advisor To-yen, begins

preparing for a rebellion. (1400) Hwei Ti is informed that his uncle Prince Shang is going to rebel in Kiangnan; to avoid examination he imolates himself. Hwei Ti strips two other uncles, Tsi and Tai, of all titles and honors. To allay suspicion, Prince Yen sends three of his sons to Nanking. (Aug) Prince Yen raises the standard of rebellion and marches into Shantung: He defeats royal troops under King Ping-wun who is replaced by Li King-lung who camps at Ho-chien, Chihli. Li King-lung attacks Ying-sing (under command of prince Yen's son); jealous of his general Ku-nung's success (he is about to take the city) Li King-lung recalls him; prince Yen attacks the imperial forces and flees to Teh-chow, $\frac{2}{3}$ smaller than before. Prince Yen demands Hwei Ti put his two advisors to death. Hwei Ti doesn't. (1401)(April) Li King-lung, reinforced, marches against prince Yen where at river Peh-keu the prince defeats him with great slaughter. Li King-lung flees to Teh-chow then to Tsi-nan-fu. Prince Yen takes Teh-chow and advances on Tsi-nan-fu left in command of Shig-yung while Li King-lung flees to Nan-king. Shing-yuan, with the aid of Ping-ngan attacking Teh-chow, manages to defeat prince Yen's forces; imperial forces take Teh-chow. Battle of Tong-chang, generals Chin-yang and Tieh-huen defeat the prince, whose life is spared only on orders of Hui Ti. Urged on by To-yen, prince Yen prepares another campaign, this time against Chin-yang who is at first successful but next day is defeated by prince Yen: Chin-kang flees to Teh-chow; Hui Ti dismisses his two unpopular advisors and confiscates their estates (1402) Hui Ti sends word throughout the empire calling all troops to the capital that can be spared. (April) Ping-ngan armies with reinforcements from Shensi but is defeated by Yen. Hui Ti talks peace with Yen while sending Ping-ngan secretly against him at Peking. Yen, suspecting Hui Ti, secretly has a raid burn the imperial provisioning boats. Meanwhile, the garrison in Peking defeats Ping-ngan. (1403) Yen orders his forces to march south. Hui Ti sends general Su to Shantung - he defeats Yen. Prince Yen's soldiers become disheartened so he attacks Chin-yung at Pu Tze-keu and only defeats him by the arrival of his second son. Yen now marches against general Ho-fuh, severely defeating him, crosses river Hwai and takes Yang-chow. Hui Ti offers peace but Yen refuses. (Aug) Having bested Ming armies under Mei-yin, Chin-yung and others, prince Yen reaches Nanking, which is surrendered to him by Li-king. Yen has the palace burnt, killing the queen and many household ladies. Meanwhile, Hui Ti has escaped to Szchwan becoming a Buddhist priest. After killing Hui Ti's loyalists and those that helped T'ai Tsu to the throne, prince Yen becomes emperor as V3 Ch'eng Tsu. He seeks to reassert Chinese presence on the Western seas. He restores his brothers Chow, Tsi, Tai and Min to their former ranks and honors. For his loyalty and aid, he renames the eunuch Me He as Zheng He, appointing him as admiral to lead a great naval force: Construction of a great trading navy begins. Accused (wrongly) of treason, Li-king is executed. (1405)(11 July) Admiral Zheng He receives his sailing orders. (1405 – 1407) Admiral Zheng's first voyage: With 317 ships and 27,870 men, he leaves Nanjing with silks, porcelain, and spices for trade. He defeats pirates in the Strait of Malacca and reaches Sumatra, Ceylon and India. [A great trading armada under admiral Cheng Ho (Zheng He; "Eunuch of the Three Jewels") heads S'ward on a voyage of trade and exploration The fleet includes 62 9-masted galleons of 450' length and 180' beam. It has a company of 37,000 men. The ships are rigged w/fore and aft sails, axially mounted rudders and are divided by watertight bulkheads and can each carry about 1500 tons.] (1406) Minister Li-kwei of Tonquin murders the king, then his son and becomes king. He tells Ch'eng Tsu that the king died naturally and the people wanted him as their king. (1407) A grandson of the murdered king of Tonquin informs Ch'eng Tsu of the truth of Li-kwei's rule. Ch'eng Tsu sends a force that is intercepted and slain by Li-kwei. Ch'eng Tsu sends a force under Chu-nung and Chang-fu (Chu-nung dies on the way); Chang-fu crosses the Fu-liang river and defeats the Tonquinese, capturing Li-kwei. As no heirs to the throne could be found, Tonquin is annexed to China, divided into 15 prefectures, 41 departments and 280 counties. (1407 – 1409) Admiral Zhen's second voyage. He brings back the ambassadors of Sumatra, India and elsewhere who had come to China with the return of his first voyage. This voyage firmly establishes Chinese trade links in the Indian Ocean. (1408) Japanese raid the Chinese coast, a fleet under Chen-suan is sent to meet them. Also, a Tonquinese insurrection begins, the leader claiming he is of royal blood and has rights to the throne. (1409) Chinese forces manage to suppress the Tonquin insurrection. Meanwhile, Ch'eng Tsu sends an army under Kiu-fuh to reprimand the Mongols for prepar-ing to invade China (some still claim rights to the Chinese throne). Kiu-fuh's army is massacred. (1409 – 1411) Admiral Zheng's third voyage; the admiral, a Muslim, offers gifts to a Buddhist temple in India. (1410) Ch'eng Tsu personally leads an army against the Mongols, severely defeating them in western Mongolia and then eastward against Alutai who is severely defeated. Ch'eng Tsu returns to Peking with much plunder. (1413 – 1415) Admiral Zheng's fourth voyage: This time he goes beyond India, across the Arabian Sea to Persia, landing at the mouth of the Persian Gulf. (1415) A pair of giraffes are sent by Cheng Ho to Peking from Bengal. (1417 - 1419) Zheng's great trading armada reaches Malindi on it's fifth voyage. In Aden, the sultan presents him with exotic gifts such as zebras, lions and ostriches. Ch'eng Tsu's brother Hwei rebels but is siezed and reduced to rank of a commoner. Kau-hu, Ch'eng Tsu's second son plunders his people and is banished to Yongan in Shantung. (1418) A rebellion in Tonquin is put down by imperial forces. (1419) Japanese invade Liau-tung but are compelled to retreat. (1421) Ch'eng Tsu moves his capital to Peking amid much consternation by that city's populace tired of war and apprehensive of the public expense of supporting the ruler. Mongol ruler Alutai refuses tribute; a Chinese force forces him to submit. (1421 – 1422) Zheng's sixth voyage again reaches Africa, this time southern Somalia. As before, he continues the practice of "shuttle diplomacy", transporting ambassadors to and from China. (1422-3) Alutai again refuses tribute, again he is forced to submit. (1424) Alutai gathers a large

army and invades Ming territory. Ch'eng Tsu, now ill, defeats the Mongols, forcing them to retreat. While returning to Peking, Ch'eng Tsu dies at Yu-muh-ch'wan. By his order, his eldest son succeeds him as V4 Jen Tsung (47 years old). (1425-6) While his eldest son is arranging the transfer of the capital back to Peking, after a nine month reign, Jen Tsung dies. His 27 year old son succeeds as V5 Suan (Hsuan) Tsung. (1426-7) Another rebellion flares in Tonquin, three times Ming armies are defeated; by the end of 1427 it is decided that Tonquin shall remain under a native government with China acting only as over-lord and tributary. (1428) Kau-ha, prince of Han, begins a rebellion. He is exposed to Suan Tsung by Chang-fu who refused to join his plot. Chang-fu leads an army against Han at Yu-ngan; Han capitulates and is soon executed. (1430) About this time Suan Tsung decides to provide education for the eunuchs, soon, receiving first class instruction, they utilize it for their own gain and not Chinas, as was Suan Tsung's intent. (1431 – 1433) Admiral Zheng's sixth voyage, this time reaching Africa's Swahili coast, with a side trip to Mecca. It is the last voyage, as Zheng dies and is buried at sea. (1433) Those at court favoring an isolationist foreign policy win out: Funding for great trading expeditions is discontinued. (1435) After having put away his childless queen (against ministerial opposition), Suan Tsung dies. His son by a beautiful concubine succeeds him as V6 Ying Tsung. His mother, Chang-chi, holds the reins of power. Yang Sz-ch'i is prime minister She has the eunuch Wang-chin, Ying Tsung's favorite, reduced in influence. (1440) Hwei Ti is discovered in a monastery in Sz-chwan, brought to the capital and given apartments in the palace. (1441) A rebellion in Burma is speedily suppressed by a 150,000 man Chinese force. Meanwhile, the eunuch Wang-chin, using his growing influence with Ying Tsung, imprisons the governor-generals of Shansi and Honan for not paying him proper respect. (1442) Ying Tsung marries, amid much rejoicing. At the close of the year, Ying Tsung's mother and regent Chang-chi die: Now Wang-chin, no longer restrained by her, begins acting more imperiously and domineering. (1449) The Mongols, angered by their treatment by Wang-chin while delivering their tribute, invade Kansuh led by Wei-la-teh. Wang-chin and Ying Tsung lead an army of over 500,000 against them. Meanwhile, other Mongol forces, one under Ye-sin, invade Chinese territory. The Ming army, by the time it reaches Suan-hwa, is completely disorganized: The advanced division has been wiped out by the Mongols. Retreat is ordered, it reaches T'u-nuh and is surrounded by Mongol forces. Weakened by drought, the imperial forces are defeated - Wang-chin is killed - routed; Ying Tsung is taken prisoner. Now the Mongols try to ransom Ying Tsung, and when it is sent refuse to return him to China. Meanwhile, the queen-dowager orders troops to Peking against Yu-ch'ien CIC, orders Wang-chin's family exterminated. To provide a leader, Ying Tsung's younger brother is made emperor as V7 King Ti (Tai Tsung). Battle of Ta-tung; Yu-ch'ien defeat the Mongols who retreat, taking Ying Tsung with them. (1450) Mongol chief Ye-sien again invades Chinese territory, he is twice defeated and returning to his territory becomes involved in dispute with his nobles over divisions of spoils from previous successes. (1451) Ye-sien sends ambassadors to Peking offering peace and Ying Tsung. King Ti, who doesn't desire to step down refuses. Soon, he OKs the return of Ying Tsung (as it would be disgraceful to leave his brother in bondage) (1452) King Ti appoints his own son as heir while Ying Tsung's son is set aside as prince. To show his good faith, King Ti has the Buddhist temple "Great Happiness" built, soon, however, King Ti's son dies. (1453) Mongol chief Ye-sien proclaims himself Khan. (1454) Ala, second in rank, kills Ye-sien and assumes the Khanate. (1457) King Ti falls ill and though he tries to hide it, his court returns his brother to the throne. V8 Ying Tsung. Carries out a purge of those who opposed him; Yu-ch'ien is wrongly accused of being one of these and is killed. With China deprived now of Yu-ch'ien, the Mongols (this year under Pau-la) begin a period of bold incursions into China. (1461) The eunuch Ts'an-kieh leads a palace insurrection; it is speedily put down. (1464) Ying Tsung falls ill and dies. During his reign the 90 volume Tai Ming Yih T'ung Chi was published by Li-hien, comprising the Ming history to date. V9 Hien (Hsien) Tsung (son, 17 years old). He is controlled by his concubine Man-kwei. Hien Tsung, however, does restore the family of Yu Ch'ien to their homes and property. Insurrections occur in Honan, Kweichow, Sz-chwan and Shansi; they are suppressed. (1473) A Mongol irruption is turned back and the important trading center Ha-mi is captured. (1475) About this time Hien Tsung has the Great Wall repaired, securing a large area of cultivation, and has the Grand Canal from Peking to the Peiho deepened to accommodate rice boats. About this time too Hien Tsung comes under the influence also of the eunuch Hung-chih (he is dismissed six years later). (1488) Death of Man-kwei greatly grieves Hien Tsung and eight months later he dies. V10 Hiau (Hsiao) Tsung (son, 18 years old). His able and loyal minister is Ma Wen-chin. Early in his reign the sale of government offices is prohibited. Other events during Hiau Tsung's reign: Tartar chief Ahamateh captures Ha-mi, is repulsed, captures it again and is repulsed again, forced to make a humble submission. Ma Wen-chin places a prince in command of the city. An insurrection on the island of Hainan is suppressed. V11 Wu Tsung (son, 15 years old). Liu-kin and other eunuchs desire greater influence in government, so go out of the way to appease the tastes and enjoyments of Wu Tsung. His nobles and the Six Boards remonstrate but Wu Tsung refuses to listen; the old palace officials are dismissed. (1508) Wu Tsung decrees that all politicians must first pass through Liu-kin who has the power to dismiss them; from this time Liu-kin's power grows considerably. (1510) About this time insurrections break out in Hunan, Hupeh Szchwan and Shensi (this last headed by Wu Tsung's uncle Ngan-hoa). Imperial troops are putting these down, and general Chang on his return tells Wu Tsung

that if Liu-kin isn't killed the whole country will be in revolt. After a long hesitation, Wu Tsung consents and Liu-kin is investigated; it is found he had been corrupt and had designs on rule: He is executed. Eventually the insurrections are put down. Now Wu Tsung chooses another favorite, Kiang-pin, as his closest advisor. (1513)(Autumn) The prince of Ha-mi dies and is succeeded by his son Pan Ga-chi, who is cruel and fearing assassination hands the city over to Ahamateh (Mongol chief). (1515) About this time Wu Tsung's tastes are growing over more vicious and dissolute, encouraged by Kiang-pin. An expedition is made into Shansi and the commander of Chu-yang refuses to admit him; Kiang-pin replaces the commander with a eunuch who obeys him. Another time Ahamateh leads a large force as far as Ta-tung, besieging it. For five days imperial troops cannot dislodge them; Wu Tsung sends for gen Chang who defeats the Tatars; Wu Tsung takes all the credit. (1516) Prince Ning raises rebellion in Kiangsi but Kiang-pin plans another expedition in that area; general Chang protests, is cast into prison and dies. This year, a Portuguese ship under Rafael Perestrello arrives at Canton. (1517) Four Portuguese ships under Ferdinand Andrade are received by the high authorities of Canton, among the visitors is a special envoy sent by the governor of Goa. This visit sets a pattern of growing trading relations and the establishment of Portuguese traders at Amoy and Ningpo. (1519)(Summer) Prince Ning with 100,000 men, advances on the capital, having already taken Nanching and Kiukiang. Wang-shen, busy quelling rebellions in Fuhkien besieges Nanching. Prince Ning returns and is defeated, captured and executed at Peking (Nov 1520). (1520)(Sept) Wu Tsung, accompanied by Kiang-pin, sets out from Nanking for Peking. While sailing at a stop, he contracts a cold. (1521) After several months of sickness, Wu Tsung dies. With no heir, the empress-dowager and ministers decide upon a grandson of Hien Tsung who becomes emperor as

V12 Shih Tsung Before his elevation (May 1522) Kiang-pin is executed for having led Wu Tsung astray, along with his family; his property is confiscated. (1523) An uprising in Kanush by soldiers is suppressed. Uprisings by the peoples of Honan, Yunnan and Shantung are suppressed. (1524)(Aug) Ahamateh leading 20,000 Turfans besieges Suhchow but is forced to retreat (1527) Ahamateh besieges Suan-hwa-fu but is forced to retreat. (1528) Ahamateh attacks Suhchow to seize an ally that had gone over to the Chinese, but he is prevented by the Chinese. He offers to surrender Ha-mi if the ex-ally is given to him; the offer is refused and Ahamateh retreats to his country. (1536) Shih Tsung, a devoted Taoist, has all Buddhist temples pulled down and builds a palace for his mother with the money realized. Meanwhile, the king of Cochin China informs Shih Tsung that Li-li who had usurped the throne was murdered by Moh, a scion of the royal family, who placed a son of Li-li on the throne but retained all power. A Chinese army descends on Cochin-China and Moh submits, is given command over 13 circuits while supreme authority is returned to the young ruler who becomes tributary to Shih Tsung. (1537) By this time there are three Portuguese settlements in Canton. Also this year, Portuguese traders on the pretext of drying goods injured in a storm, occupy Macao, making it their permanent abode. (1542) The Mongols who have been raiding northern China for years, now under An-ta force the commander of Ta-tung in Shansi to retreat; they plunder and enslave the people of the surrounding country. (1544) An-ta again invades, penetrating to Wei-chow w/ is captured; Peking becomes concerned: The defeated commanders are punished for their failure. (1545) General Chang-han advances against the invaders who withdraw. (1546) An-ta leads his raiders into China. (1547) An-ta leads his raiders into China. (1549) Chow Siang-wen, commander of Ta-tung, defeats An-ta, forcing him to withdraw without booty. Meanwhile, the heir to the throne dies; his next brother is appointed in his place. Also, a conflict between the Japanese (who have been trading with Chehkiang for years) and Chekiangese over difficulty of the former to receive payment; they plunder the coast: The provincial governor forbids all trade. The Japanese have him impeached, he is killed and Shih Tsung restores trade. (1550)(Sept) An-ta again leads a Mongol force into China, penetrating as far as T'ungchan, desecrating the graves of the emperor's relatives. Imperial forces are unable to defeat them and the Mongols withdraw. To stop these invasions, Ch'eu-loan proposes that horse-fairs be opened at Ta-tung and Suan-hoa where Mongol and Chinese can come to know each other better. Shih Tsung agrees. (1552) The horse-fairs at Ta-tung and Suan-hoa are closed due to the lopsided trading practices of the Mongols. To withstand the anticipated Mongol attack that would result from this cancellation, work is begun on a new five-mile long wall along the weakest part of Peking. Meanwhile, the Japanese capture and plunder Ningpo, Shanghai and Suchoy then leave. (1553) (Aug) An-ta, influenced by two Chinese traitors, advances to Ta-tung where he defeats an army, then leisurely withdraws. Meanwhile, a severe rebellion breaks out in Honan led by Sz-shang with over 100,000 men. It takes over 40 days for imperial troops to dislodge him from the large part of the province he has sieged. (1554) The Japanese again plunder Shanghai and Sungkiang; belabored, Chang-king asks for soldiers from Canton and Kiangsi which is OK'd but prime minister Yen-sung dislikes Chang-king and sends Chau Wen-hwo to watch him: Chau Wen-hwo orders Chang-king to attack but Chang waits until the reinforcements arrive; Chau reports to Shih Tsung that Chang is a coward. When his troops arrive, Chang defeats the Japanese with much slaughter. Now fearing Chang, Chau claims the victory for himself to Shih Tsung who later has Chang executed for cowardice: Chau Wen-hwo is elevated to high rank. (1557) Shih Tsung discovers the true nature of Chau Wen-hwo and banishes him, enroute to his destination he dies. About this time the wife of An-ta's son Sihlina flees to China, settling in Ta-tung. Sihlina pursues her, taking Yingchow and Sohchow in Shensi and besieges Ta-tung. Unable to take this town, negotiations are opened: Sihlina promises to give up several Chinese traitors and withdraw if his wife is handed over. It is done, he kills his wife but refuses to withdraw until a battle severely defeats him, forcing

him to go. (1559) In the continuing struggle with Japanese mauraders (sometimes allying with Chinese pirates), this year a large Japanese fleet begins plundering between Wenchow and the Chusan group; they are sent retreating by a large force of Chinese men-of-war. (1563) Japanese mauraders again appear, this time along the shores of Fohkien prov, capturing Amoy, Tung-ngan and Hing-hwa. Chinese forces inflict a disastrous defeat on them, recovering all they had taken. (1565) By this time Shih Tsung's administration is slipping in its attention to his people; he is more superstitious and more under the influence of Taoist priests who promise him the elixir of immortality. The scholar Hai-jui, member of the Board of War, tells Shih Tsung of his shortsightedness, risking death. (15-66)(End) On his death bed, Shih Tsung confesses his follies and orders all Taoist altars in the palace destroyed.

V13 Muh (Mu) Tsung (third son, 30 years old). Mongols under An-ta invade Shansi, murdering and plundering, then withdraw. This year also, two Cossacks arrive in Peking but they are not permitted to see the emperor because they do not bring presents (ie; tribute). Russian-Chinese trade, however, is growing. (1568) Muh Tsung appoints his third son his heir. Also, he appoints Tsi Chin-kwang commander of the northern frontier against the Mongols: He disciplines his men and builds 1,200 forts and when An-ta again invades, soundly defeats him. (1570) An-ta and son Sihlina invade Liau-tung, gaining some successes. Muh Tsung sends gen Li Ch'eng-liang who forces them to retreat. Later, An-ta's grandson goes to China, placing himself under her protection (because An-ta had taken his beautiful wife as a concubine). An-ta invades China demanding his grandson's return. Muh Tsung states only on conclusion of terms of peace; An-ta gives up his Chinese traitors: It is agreed and An-ta is recognized as head of all Mongol tribes. (1572) Muh Tsung falls ill. He places his son in the care of his ministers Kau-kung and Chang-chu.

V14 Shen Tsung (son, 10 years old). This year a barrier is built across the isthmus separating Macao (which is by now in control of the Portuguese) from the mainland. Mandarins are appointed to rule the Chinese in Macao. (1575) By about this time the minister Chang-chu has managed to have Kau-kung dismissed; Chang-chu has gained much power. (1577)(Summer) The aboriginals of Kwangtung province raise a formidable insurrection which takes four months to quell; including recapture of 500 forts and killing of over 40,000 rebels. (1578) Tartar chief Tumuhteh leads 30,000 men into Yau-chow but is driven back by general Li-ch'eng. (1580) Chang-chu offers to resign his power to Shen Tsung but both the emperor and the queen-dowager (who says her son should be 30 before assuming the full government) convinces him not to. This year too, with the country prospering, Shen Tsung issues an edict that all taxes not fully paid up during the first seven years of his reign are remitted and debts should never be required to pay up what was due the government. (1582) Death of Chang-chu to the sorrow of Shen Tsung but to everyone else's joy. Soon, however, his true character is revealed and his posthumous honors are withdrawn, his confederate Fang-pu, chief of the eunuchs, is banished and his large estate confiscated. (1583) Ni-kan, chief of Tulu city, with soldiers sent by Li Ch'ung-liang (Chinese commander of Liau-tung) marches against Gu-lo, city of Ua-tai Jang-jing (whose wife is a cousin of Noorhachu (born 1559), grandson of Huen, descendant of Fancha, descendant of Aisin Gioro (Bukuli Yung-shun) son of Fokulum, a Northern Tartar maiden) who calls for help: Huen and son march to aid Ua-tai who refuses to leave with them. Ua-tai agrees to surrender if their lives are spared: Ni-kan agrees but then slaughters many, including Huen and son. Noorhachu, angered at the death of his father this way, demands the bodies of his relatives; the Chinese comply. He next demands Ni-kan, Chinese refuse; Noorhachu begins harrassing the Chinese who finally give in and hand Ni-kan (who was appointed lord over all Manchuria) to him. (1586) Ni-kan is executed. Noorhachu thus gains much fame among the Tartars. He aims to make himself leader of one grand confederation of the Nuchen. (1587) A great flood kills many in the Chinese capital. (1588) A severe famine strikes the northern provinces of China. One of Shen Tsung's censors reprimands him for not attending to his duties, but to no avail. (1591) Many clashes between Tartars and Chinese occur. Toward end of year, Li Ch'ung-liang suffers a defeat at the hands of Noorhachu who annexes the Yalukiang district east of Hotuala. (1592) The Mongol officer Pa-pai leads a military insurrection in Shensi because several Chinese officers were jealous of his successes have plotted his disgrace. Li Jio-sung defeats him and forces him to Ning-hia who cannot dislodge Pa-pai from the city so he floods him out by diverting the Yellow River: Pa-pai commits suicide. Now a Japanese force under Fashiba (Chinese=Ping Siu-kieh; Japanese = Kideyoshi), taking advantage of Korean disorder, land at Fusan from 500 ships and advance on Seol, capturing the city in a month. Meanwhile, king Li-yen flees to Yalu-kiang and asks assistance from Shen Tsung at Peking. The Japanese defeat the Chinese army and advance into Chinese territory. Shen Tsung sends ambassadors to Fashiba and later a Chinese force under Li Jio-sung defeats the Japanese. Li pursues the Japanese and is ambushed, barely escaping. He then sends a force that burns the Japanese supply depot at Liang-shan, forcing them to retreat from Seol to Fusan, where they remain in relative safety. (1593-6) Minor irruptions of the Mongols. Silver mines are opened in various parts of the empire to supply deficiencies in the economy caused by war costs and court extravagances. (1598) About this time Noorhachu manages to defeat seven chiefs in the battle of Gu-lo Hill, considerably strengthening his position in the Nu-chen tribes. (1599) Noorhachu annexes Ha-da, the Chinese re-monstrate but he ignores them, refusing any longer to pay tribute. (1600) About this time bending to the pressure of public opinion, Shen Tsung names his eldest son Ch'ang-lo his heir, though he prefers his second son Prince Fuh. Prince Fuh and his mother Ching-kwei plot with some eunuchs the death of Ch'eng-lo; the plot is unsuccessful and hurriedly swept under the rug and forgotten. (1613) Noorhachu having annexed the district of Wu-la, marches on the last independent Nu-chen prince of Ye-ho. The people of Ye-ho prepare for the invasion and ask aid from the Chinese who send the commander at Kai-yuen.

Noorhachu captures seven cities and 19 stockades but is then forced to retreat by the Chinese. He now vows to defeat the Mings so that he can pursue his affairs at Liau-tung without their interference. (1616) Having established his power thoroughly over the Nu-chen chiefs, Noorhachu, mostly on their urging, assumes the title Emperor Ying Ming ("Brave and Illustrious Emperor") as

W. The CH'ING (Manchu) DYNASTY

W1 T'ai Tsu. He sets about the formation of the Manchu characters from the Mongolian and adopts 12 root symbols from which all other words in the language are to be formed. He also divides the whole of the Manchus into eight banners, under the colors Yellow, Red, Blue and White, each bordered by another to make eight. (1618) Having drawn up a list of seven grievances [1: Mings has slain his father and grandfather though he has never invaded their territory; 2: The Mings had violated a non-invasion agreement by aiding Ye-ho; 3: Every year lawless Chinese have invaded and plundered his people; 4: Ming influence has caused the rebellion of a Mongol horde and the rejection of his betrothed daughter; 5: The lands around the river Chai and about San-pun and Fun-gan wrested from the Manchus and their armies dispossessed; 6: The Chinese have believed the misrepresentations of the people of Ye-ho and sent insulting letters; 7: The Mings have prevented Ha-da from remaining loyal to him even after twice conquering it: Therefore; they have run counter to the manifest will of Heaven] to justify his invasion of Chinese territory. Noorhachu captures Fu-shan. He defeats a Ming army sent against him and (Autumn) captures Ts'ing-ho, slaying almost all its defenders. (1619) Alarmed at Noorhachu's successes, Shen Tsung assembles a large army headed by Yang-kau at Mukden who divides it into four: First under Tu-sung to attack Fu-shun; second under Ma-lin to go to Kai-yuen to encourage the people of Ye-ho; third under general Li to advance along the Chung river; fourth under general Liu to head for Shing-king from Kwan-tien. Now Noorhachu abandons the places he siezed: Battle of Sar-hu hill; he defeats Tu-sung. Battle of Shang-jien; he defeats Ma-lin. Next he routes Hen Liu, all in five days. General Li retreats to a place of safety. Now Noorhachu captures Kai-yuen and Tieh-ling (defeating the Mongols of Kar-ka there who were aiding the city). (Winter) General Hiung (who Shen Tsung had appointed to replace Yang-kau) reaches Liau-yang and begins planning against the Manchus. This year too, Russian ambassador Pettlin is refused an audience with the emperor for not bringing tribute. (1620) General Hiung is recalled to Peking to defend false charges made against him by a faction opposed to him. On his way, Shen Tsung dies and is succeeded by his son

V15 Kwang (Kuang) Tsung. Meanwhile, Dutch forces have settled on Formosa. Kwang Tsung rules about a month, dies and is succeeded (1621) by son

V16 Hi (Hsi) Tsung (16 years old). Noorhachu marches against Wan Ying-tai, who succeeded general Hiung, and defeats him at Moukden and Liau-yang, where Wan is killed: Now the Nu-chens have complete control of Liau-tung. Now general Hiung, reinstated, arrives Shan-hai-kwan and informs Wan's successor Wang-hoa of his wrong troop dispersal. Wang (supported by the eunuch Wei-chung) ignores this and is subsequently defeated as the Manchus capture Kwan-ling; Hiung and Wang are beheaded. Meanwhile, the Dutch, coming from Formosa, take possession of the Pescadores and land at Amoy, from whence they penetrate as far as Chang-chow and Hai-ting. Dutch-Chinese battling begins. (1622) A formidable rebellion in Kwei-chow takes three armies to put it down. In Shantung, the "White Lily" secret society rises up in successful rebellion, but their plundering causes the people to turn against them and in seven months the revolution collapses. This year too, Chinese forces manage to drive the Dutch off the mainland; they return to Formosa. (1624) Dutch arrive Macao with 17 ships but are unable to gain commercial access; they fortify the Pescadores. (1625) By this time under the leadership of Wei-chung the eunuchs have absorbed all power into their hands, driving from court all loyalists (such as the censor Yang-lien) who dare protest. This year Noorhachu moves his capital to Maukden: Chinese generals Chung-hwan and Kau-ti oppose him; Kau-ti pulls all of his men behind the Great Wall, declaring China shouldn't rule beyond Shan-hai-kwan. Chung-hwan doesn't buy this and remains at Ning-yuen where he is besieged by the Manchus. Meanwhile, Chinese forces oust the Dutch from the Pescadores, they retire to Formosa (under Japanese domination) and are given the island - called Zelandia. (1626) The Manchu forces are compelled to withdraw from Ning-yuen with an enormous loss of life. (Sept) Death of W1 T'ai Tsu (Noorhachu). He is succeeded by his son as

W2 T'ai Tsung Wen. This year the Dutch turn Zelandia into a fortress. From here missionaries spread out among the people of Formosa. (1627) The Manchus invade and force the submission of Korea, eliminating an enemy friendly to the Mings. (Aug) They advance on Ning-yuen, but Chung-hwan is so courteous that they retire in disgrace. (Sept) Death of Hsi Tsung. On his death bed he commended the traitor eunuch Wei-chung. He is succeeded by his brother Ts'ung-ching as

V17 Chwang Lieh Ti (Ssu Tsung, etc). 1First act is to banish Wei-chung who commits suicide Next, he gives Chung-hwan full powers to act as seems best to him against the Manchus. (1629) T'ai Tsung leads over 100,000 against China, captures Tsun-hwa, joined by a large contingent of Mongols, encamps near Tung-chow where he issues a proclamation to the Chinese vindicating this advance into their territory and recapitulating the wrongs the Mings laid upon the Manchus. T'ai Tsung now advances to north of the walls of Peking; Chinese armies begin arriving; battling begins; through a trick using captured eunuchs, Chung-hwan is imprisoned by Chwang Lieh Ti (executed Aug 1630). (1630) With proposals of peace being rejected but not being strong enough to capture Peking,

T'ai Tsung retreats with Chinese armies close behind; they recapture Yung-ping, Tsun-hwa, Ts'ien ngan and Lan-chow. Meanwhile Chang Hien-chung and Li Tsi-chung lead a powerful rebellion in Shensi: An army is sent against them and they feign submission. But later gen Ts'au-wen is sent against them, defeating them and forcing them into Shansi. Soon, however, even being defeated again several times by Ts'au-wen, the rebel's organization spreads throughout Hunan and Hupeh. (1634) Imperial forces under general Chen hole up Li Tsi-chung but Chen lets him go upon Li's groundless promises; in a few months Li's forces number over 200,000. This year English captain Waddel arrives Macao to carry out trade but is repulsed by the Portuguese and fired upon by the Chinese. He bombards their forts and the Chinese then allow English participation in the junk trade. (1635) The Manchu's cast their first cannon, calling it the "Great General" and capture the fortress of general Tsu abuilding on the river Taliang east of King-chow. Soon the entire districts of Cha-har - the whole of Inner Mongolia - is under Manchu sway T'ai Tsung, knowing he must firstst take Shan-hai-kwan before he can safely attack Peking, captures King-chow and Hing-shan. (1636)(May) T'ai Tsung names his dynasty the Tai Ts'ing, builds an altar to heaven, an ancestral temple and honors his father. (1638) By this time the great rebellion is growing in power, the Ming dynasty having lost the nation's confidence: Chang Hien-chung "rules" Honan while Li Tsi-chung "rules" in Shensi and Shansi: Successes alternate yearly between rebeland imperial forces. (1640) Rebel leader Chang-hien is defeated by Liang-yu, losing 10,000 men. (1641) Chang-hien captures Hiang-yang along with a royal prince but is routed by Liang-yu who has just defeated Li Tsi-chung. Meanwhile Li Tsi-chung is defeated at k'ai-fung in Honan: Chang-hien captures Siang-yang. At the close of the year, Li Tsi-chung captures Nan-yang and attacks K'ai-fung but is forced to withdraw. (1642) After having captured over 12 neighboring towns, Li Tsi-chung besieges K'ai-fung which holds out for nine months when finally Li floods it with the Yellow River: The ensuing destruction forces him to retreat. (1643) Chang-hien captures Wu-chang and is successful in Kiangnan. Li Tsi-chung assumes the title of king and is indignant with Chang-hien for doing the same. (Oct) Death of T'ai Tsung; his ninth son (5 years old) becomes Manchu ruler as Shih Tsu with uncle Dor-gun regent. (Nov) Li defeats commander Sun-ch'wan capturing Tung-kwan. (1644)(Feb) Li Tsi-chun assumes title Emperor, calling his dynasty the "Tai Shun"; he appoints six boards for the government of the country, establishes orders of nobility and rewards those who have helped him do so. He now heads for Peking, capturing T'ai-yuen and other cities but losing many men in taking Ning-wu: Ta-tung and Suanhwa submit to Li and soon he arrives before the walls of Peking. Unable to excape and not having a strong enough force to fight and with the commander of the southern gates Ts'an-hwa opening the gates to Li's men, Chwang Lieh Ti and his faithful eunuch Wang kill themselves. (March-May) Le takes possession of Peking, ordering all Mandarins to appear before him on pain of death. Meanwhile, Wu San-kwei (son of rebel chief Wu Siang) commander of Ning-yuen, is at Fung-yun (having abandoned Shan-hai-kwan) deciding what to do: His father advises submission to Li, but news of the rebel capture of the beautiful slave-girl Ch'en-yuan enrages Wu San-kwei who marches back to Shan-hai-kwan and asks the Manchus to aid him in ousting the rebels from Peking. In eight days Dor-gun and the Manchus join Wu San-kwei. Battle of Shan-hai-kwan, the allies severely defeat the forces of Li who flees to Yung-ping then Peking where he has all of the relatives of Wu San-kwei and the Ming princes killed, he sets the palaces afire and flees to the west. Wu San-kwei pursues him. (June) The regent Dor-gun enters Peking. He pacifies the inhabitants, assuring them of carrying on their lives as usual. He moves the Manchu capital from Moukden to Peking. (Oct) Dor-gun's nephew, now 6 years old, arrives in Peking as W3 Shih T'su. The first to pay respects to the new emperor are the eunuchs; the high officials of the Board of War are indignant and complain; an order is issued forbidding the eunuchs to hold any office position under the crown. The new dynasty is surprisingly recognized with much unanimity acorss northern China, Mongolia and Korea. (1645) With the consent of K'o-fa (president of one of the boards of Nanking) the nobles recognize the ignorant drunkard Fuh Wang, grandson of Shen Tsung, as Ming emperor. Dor-gun informs K'o-fa of Manchu good intentions in saving the monarchy but K'o-fa replies if they wish to save it why do they now rule? Dor-gun sends an army under his brother that captures Hai-chow and other cities but the forces of K'o-fa stop them and retake Hai-chow. Meanwhile, Wu San-kwei pursues the rebel Li Tsi-chung into the mountains of Kiu-king, 30 miles south of Tung-shan district, having captured fortress after rebel fortress and whittling down the rebel forces from over 500,000 to 20: There the local peasants kill the remaining rebels with their hoes. Now Wu San-kwei is free to reinforce Dor-gun's brother in the south. Battle of Yang-chow - after seven days the Manchu forces take the city; K'o-fa dies. (June) Manchu forces arrive Yangtze River. They sieze Nan-king; Fuh Wang flees but is captured enroute and executed at Nan-king. Now Ch'ang Wang is named Ming emperor, but three days later submits to the Manchus, allowing them to enter Hangchow. Now T'ang Wang, a ninth generation descendant of Hung Wu (T'ai Tsu) names himself Ming emperor at Fuchow and invites all to join him in driving out the Manchu invaders. (1646) A Manchu army defeats the rebel Ch'ang-hien giving them complete possession of Szechwan. T'ang Wang, to be nearer to Hangchow, moves residence to Yen-ping: The Manchus, taking advantage of his inability to raise an adequate army, capture Ningpo, Shanghai, Wenchow and T'aichow: Soon taking the whole of Chehkiang province. They are now able to advance on Fuhkien province, (Nov) besiege Yen-ping, capture it and pursue T'ang Wang to T'ingchow where he is captured (executed at Fuchow). Now Changchow and Chinchew pass to Manchu control. Ching Chih-liang, commander of the fleet, submits and is sent to Peking but his son Coxinga (Koxinga) refuses, sailing to the region of the Pescadores from which he undertakes raiding actions. (1647-8) Kwei Wang, a great

grand-son of Shen Tsung, is proclaimed emperor in Chau-k'ing, Kwangtung province. The Manchus march against him, he flees to Ch'uenchow in Kwangsi where commander Ch'u Shih-sz convinces him to move to his strong city of Kwei-lin. Ch'u manages to drive off the Manchus and recapture Ping-lo and regain all Kwangsi for the Mings. Now ex-Ming general Kin-shing joins Kwei Wang, bringing Kiangsi province once again under Ming control. Also ex-Ming general Li Ch'eng-tung rebels, bringing Canton and Kwang tung province once again under Ming rule: Kwei Wang's army has grown by over 200,000. (1649) A Manchu army enters Kiangsi, recovering Kiukiang and besieging Nan-chang. Kwei Wang moves to Chau-k'ing. (Feb) The Manchus retake Hang-chow and Nan-chang (killing Kin-shing) eventually regaining all of Kiangsi province. Next, Li Ch'eng-tung is defeated (he drowns) and Canton is besieged. (Dec) Canton is retaken. Gen Kwei-lin is captured; Kwei Wang flees to Nan-ning. About this time the regent Dor-gun dies. (1650)(Aug) It is discovered that Dor-gun had meditated rebellion. Now Shih Tsu passes laws himself: No man can become a bonze without an order from a Mandarin; public examinations for degrees are to be carried on in a certain manner; mandarins may retire only in ways prescribed by him, etc. Later, Kwei Wang raises ex-general (under Chang-hien) Sun-k'o of Yunnan to Prince. (1651) Kwei Wang is moved by Sun-k'o to Ngan-lung where he is not treated too royally. (1652-3) The Manchus regain Kwangtung province but are defeated by adventurer Li Ting-kwoh who holds parts of Hunan and Kwangsi. Kwei Wang asks Li Ting-kwoh to save him from Sun-k'o. Li is unable to, however, for the Manchus defeat him - he flees to Nanning - the Manchus retake Canton and many other of his cities. (1653) Russian ambassador Baikoff (from Czar Alexis) is refused an audience because he will not prostrate himself before the dragon throne. Trade and commercial relations, however, continue unabated. (1654)(Summer) Sun-k'o sails against Wu-chang but is defeated by the Manchus; he retreats to Kweichow. Warfare is fierce around Amoy and Quemoy; Coxinga's forces capture Fuchow, Wenchow and T'aichow. This year also, a Dutch embassy spends three months in Peking, seeking trading priveleges but Shih Tsu allows only one Dutch visit every eight years. (1655) Now Ting-kwoh rescues Kwei Wang, taking him from Ngan-lung to Tienchow in Yunnan. (1656) (Nov) Sun-k'o advances against Ting-kwoh but is defeated he surrenders to the Manchus: Peking rejoices. (1657) The Manchus march three armies (against Ting-kwoh) into Kwei chow. At the river between Yunnan and Kweichow, Ting-kwoh (with his army of 30,000) is defeated; he flees. (1658) The Manchus occupy Yunnan: Kwei Wang and Ting-kwoh escape to Ying-chang and are pursued to T'ung-yueh; Kwei Wang goes on into Burmese territory. The Manchus leave San-kwei in charge of Yunnan. Meanwhile, Coxinga sails up the Yangtze to attack Nanking, is defeated and plans to go to For-mosa. (1661)(June) Coxinga besieges the Dutch in their forts, blockading them on Formosa. Meanwhile, Ting-kwoh is unable to regain Kwei Wang from the Burmese who are holding him at Ava. Now San-kwei marches a huge army into Burma, terrorizes the Burmese king demanding he relinquish Kwei Wang. It is done and the last Ming "ruler" is marched to Yunnan-fu. (1662)(March) Zelandia surrenders, the remaining Dutch taken prisoner and Coxinga takes over Formosa (ie; Ming rule). (May) Kwei Wang kills himself at Yunnan-fu. Death of Shih Tsu who entrusts his son to four of his ministers.

W4 Sheng Tsu (son, 8 years old). Death of Ting-kwoh whose son submits to the Manchus. Also, Coxinga dies from a self-injury; the chief officers elect his brother but he is defeated by Coxinga's son Ching-chin who becomes Formosa's Ming leader. The uncle flees and submits to the Manchus. Now the Manchu dynasty is acknowledged throughout almost all of the 19 provinces. About this time Ching-chin gives English traders houses in Zelandia (Formosa) and Amoy. (1663) A combined Manchu-Dutch fleet attacks Ching-chin forcing him to abandon Amoy, Quemoy and T'ung-shan. (1664) Another Manchu-Dutch fleet sent against Ching-chin fails, and the rebel chief is free to harass Chinese shipping from Formosa. (1667) Sheng Tsu, annoyed with the quarrels and divisions among his four regents (who have had his Roman Catholic tutor Adam Schaal thrown in prison) takes the government into his own hands. (1669) Sheng Tsu accepts the readjusted calendar of the Jesuit Verbiest, whom he appoints president of the Astronomical Board. (Aug) Sheng Tsi issues an edict remitting all taxes due to the 17th year of his father's reign and for the future all taxes are to be collected twice a year (July-Aug and Sept-Oct) and that all lands unjustly taken from the Chinese by the Manchus are to be restored. (1670) Sheng Tsu orders an examination into the administrative practices of the Mandarins and corrects abuses to the laws regulating prisoner handling. Also, Sheng Tsu is alarmed at the powers held by Prince Wu San-kwei (Kweichow and Yunnan), Prince Shang Ko-shi (Kwangtung and Kwangsi) and Prince Kang Ching-chung (Fuhkien and Chehkiang) as possible "rebellers": As a start the prince who is grand-son of Sun-k'o is reduced in rank to Duke. Also, Sheng Tsui establishes the rule that the services of an officer employed by the emperor ceases after five years. (1673) Prince Shang Ko-shi, fearing the possible effects of his unaccountable son Chi-sin, asks Sheng Tsu for retirement at Kuay-tung. Following this, Prince Wu San-kwei does the same and induces Prince Kang Ching-chung to follow; they are granted (San-kwei is appointed commander of Shan-hai-kwan); San-kwei sees Sheng Tsu's design to eliminate possible rebellion, (1674) so he raises the standard of rebellion, kills the governor of Yunnan and proclaims the Chow dynasty. Sheng Tsu sends forces to occupy Kingchow and Ch'ang-teh. Yang Chi-liang raises an insurrection in Peking which is speedily put down. Meanwhile San-kwei is making headway; the governor of Kwei-chow joins him. Sz-chwan province joins. Next, Prince Ching-chung bring Fuh-kien into the rebel fold; Hunan joins as does the commander of Kwei-lin. San-kwei is repulsed from Wu-chang and Sheng Tsu has his son and grand-son put to death. San-kwei asks Shang Ko-shi to join him but recieves no answer. Imperial troops sieze Sz-chwan and Han-chung for a-while. Wang-hu, the governor of Shensi, brings that province into the rebel camp. (1675) Sporadic fighting with the

advantage on the Imperial side. (1676)(Spring) Chi-sin joins the rebels causing the death of Shang Ko-shi, his father. Wang-hu submits and is made a general and ordered to atone by being zealous in his service. (Dec) Kang Ching-chung, after several defeats, submits and Sheng Tsu orders him to quell the pirate Ching-chin of Formosa. (1676-7) Ching-chin attacks Fuchow but is defeated, allowing nearly all of Fuhkien to come under Manchu rule. Chi-sin begs to return to loyalty and is accepted. Soon Ching-chin sails from Formosa and unsuccessfully attacks Chusan and Canton. He is defeated at Swatow but takes Haiting and Amoy. Meanwhile, San-kwei captures Chang-sha. (1678)(Oct) Death of Wu San-kwei of paralysis. The rebels appoint his grand-son Wu Chih-fan as leader, but he is incompetent. (1679-81) Imperial forces drive the rebels from Hupeh, Honan and Kwangsi. Kweichow is reconquered: Shih-fan retires to Yunnan-fu which is besieged. About Nov, it is taken, Shih-fan is found to be dead by suicide. Kang Ching-chung and Lin Ching-chung's deaths are ordered. Sheng Tsu now sits upon a unified empire and his power is great. (1682) Sheng Tsu now decides to proceed against Ching-chin of Formosa. Imperial forces under Prince K'ung of Fuchow are sent under Wan-ching against the rebel at Amoy and Haiting; he is defeated and Ching-chin abandons his mainland holdings and sails to Formosa. Six months later he dies, is succeeded by his able but hated son Ko-tsang who is killed by Fang Si-fan; his second son Ko-shwang becomes rebel chief. (1683) Preparations are now made for an attack on Formosa: 300 ships and 12,000 men are to be used. (July) The force sets out under command of Shih-lang and Yau K'i-sheng. After much difficulty and a disorganizing typhoon, Shin-lang manages to defeat Liu-kwah, bringing the Pescadores under Imperial rule: The fleet sails for Formosa, arriving Lurmun: Ko-shwang submits (he is sent to Peking and created a duke) and Formosa comes under Manchu rule, being made into one prefecture and three counties. (1684) English obtain a trading station in Canton. (1686) This year begins frequent clashes between Russian soldiers and Chinese frontier guards in the Amur river region. (1688) A regular duty is established on imported opium. (1689) A treaty is concluded between the Russians and China at Nih-chu; the Amur river is boundary between their domains. Bound-ary stones are erected with both Russian and Chinese inscriptions. (1690-1) A brother of the khan of the Eleuth tri-be (murdered by one Galdan, his son) flees to Sheng Tsu asking protection. Galdan, now Eleuth khan, marries the daughter of the chief of the Tsing-hai, murders her father and appropriates those territories. Soon through trickery using false bonzes, he conquers the Khalkans, whose chief Tu Sieh-tu and his son flee to Sheng Tsu. Galdan sends an embassy to Sheng Tsu asking the return of the fugitives; Sheng Tsu refuses to turn them over. (1691)(June) Galdan leads an army into Chinese territory to bring back the Khalkan chief. Battle of Wulanputang; he is defeated by armies commanded by Sheng Tsu, Prince K'ung and Prince Yu. The royal forces pursue Galdan and again defeat him. Sheng Tsu becomes ill and the pursuit is abandoned. (1692) Influenced by Verbiest (liked for his astronomical ability and ability to cast fine cannon) and other Jesuit missionaries, Sheng Tsu issues an edict of toleration for the Roman Catholic Church in China. (1693) This year artillery is formed as a distinct and recognized arm of the Imperial army. Also this year, the Koreans send Sheng Tsu 3,000 "Black Guns" as a gift for which he excuses that country from paying any tribute this year. (1694) Galdan attacks Kwei-hoa but fails; he does, however, intercept the messengers going to a district in Ili that Sheng Tsu placed in command of Galdan's nephew. Galdan tries to raise the Chinese to join him: He moves a 13,000 man army across the frontier and threatens a Russian alliance to help him reduce China unless Sheng Tsu comes to terms (1695) Chinese forces led by Sheng Tsu force Galdan to flee, dropping his plunder along the way. Chinese forces under Fei Yang-kee continue the pursuit. Battle of Chan-muhto; through a ruse, Fei severely defeats Galdan. A few months later, Sheng Tsu arrives and restores the Khal-kan's territories. The people of Tsing-hai also regain their liberty. (1696) Galdan appeals for peace; Sheng Tsu states his generosity if Galdan will submit; he refuses. (March) Sheng Tsu sends forces against Galdan who commits suicide. Galdan's nephew Tseh Wang Putan claimns credit for his uncle's death and is rewarded with the rule of all lands west of the Altai mountains, while Sheng Tsu rules thos to the east. (1700) About this time great concern is felt at court about the heir who is found to be insane. Sheng Tsu refuses to name his actual heir until the day he dies. (1702) With the appearance of a chief consul for trade for the whole of China by the East India Company, the government changes its entrance mechanism; heretofore only the Hoppo (Commissioner of Customs) and recognized traders or broker had to be placated before trade could be carried out. Now, this year, a high officer is given exclusive monopoly of trade and must be placated in addition to the Hoppo et al. (1713) Tseh Wang Putan now drunk with power decides to succeed where his uncle Galdan failed: To be-come ruler of Central Asia. First he usurps Turhuto, held by his father-in-law. Next, with his daughter married to Lah Tsang-khan, civil and military ruler of Tibet under the Dali Lama, he escorts her with a large force (for "protection") via secret ways to Tibet; there they sieze Kungputalah and kill Lah Tsang-khan. The Dali Lama is imprisoned, the country plundered and Tseh Wang Putan places his son-in-law as Tibetan ruler. Now he attacks Hami and is forced to retreat; Sheng Tsu leaves a garrison there. (1715) Sheng Tsu removes the garrison at Hami to Tsing-hai. (1716) By this time the Roman Catholic Church has become quite prosperous - in Kiangsi, Kiangsu and Nganhwui provinces there are 100 churches and 100,000 converts. The viceroy of Canton reminds Sheng Tsu that the Catholics seduce men into beliefs contrary to China's great sages. Sheng Tsu, irritated by the Pope's position in the dispute between Jesuits on one side and Dominicans and Franciscans on the other in reference to ancestral worship, the proper name for God and etc, issues an edict (for he is determined to be master over everyone in his empire) forbidding missionaries to remain in China without a permit from himself. Those that don't obtain a permit are persecuted. (1717) Tseh Wang Putan in his sporadic fighting with the Chinese defeats them at Kolawusu. (1718)

Chinese forces enter Tibet, rout those of Tseh Wang Putan (whose son-in-law flees), restoring the Dali Lama but remaining as further protection. (1719) Now plans are laid for the extermination of Tseh Wang Putan. Meanwhile, the prefect of Taiwanfu stirs up a rebellion in southern Formosa due to his oppressive management: The people rise in insurrection, officials flee to the Pescadores; in a six month but bloody campaign, the rebel lion is crushed. (1720) The high officer of trade is replaced with a Cohong - a committee of Chinese merchants - to be entirely responsible for foreign trade: They guarantee all debts to the English, how much provincial authorities are to be "placated", customs dues as well as the conduct of foreigners while trading. (Autumn) Tseh Wang Putan attacks the Turfans who have renounced their allegiance to the Eleuths and became a protectorate of China. The Chinese hand him a sound defeat and only the head of the Buddhist sect asking for mercy stays their entrance to Ili. (1722)(Nov-Dec) Death of Sheng Tsu.

W5 Shih Tsung (fourth son, 44 years old). Some, disappointed at Sheng Tsu's decision, meditate rebellion and are imprisoned. First act is to appoint his fourth son his successor. This year, also, taking the advice of the literati and governor of Chehkiang (and disliking the Roman Catholics even more than his father), Shih Tsung refers the problem to the Board of Rites that decides that all missionaries should be banished to Macao and forbidden to propagate their doctrines. Over 300 churches are destroyed; the priests are conducted to Canton. (Nov-Dec) Chief Lo-puh Tsang-tan-tin leads an insurrection in Tsing-hai. Those who refuse to join him flee to Peking. (1724-5) Lo-puh Tsang-tan-tin induces over 200,000 Buddhist monks to take up arms with him: The rebels capture Si-ning. Shih Tsung sends an army to Tur-fan to watch Tseh Wang, another to guard Tibet and sends Nien King-yan against Lo-puh. They defeat him and pursue him to another defeat crushing the rebellion; Lo-puh hides at the court of Tseh Wang. Shih Tsung makes his generals Nien King-yan and Yoh dukes. Also, shaken by the Buddhist defection, he orders that not more than 300 bonzes can be in any monastery and they are not allowed to carry arms. (1725) A tariff is enacted to add to imperial revenues. (1726) Natives of Kweichow, Szchwan and Yunnan rebell. Ngoh, viceroy of Kwei-chow reports that the system of home rule they had been under was the cause; direct Imperial rule is the only answer. Ngoh is given command of the situation and he proceeds to subdue the rebellion. (1727) Magaillans, an envoy of the King of Portugal, arrives in Peking to secure trading facilities but only exchanges gifts with Shih Tsung. A few months later, Tseh Wang dies and is succeeded by his son Tseh Ning who immediately begins assaulting Chinese territory. (1729) Viceroy Ngoh succeeds in bringing Kweichow, Sz-chwan and Yunnan under direct imperial rule. Meanwhile, generals Fu and Yoh are sent against Tseh Ning; they are ordered to return to Peking and Tseh Ning defeats their lieutenants at Hami. (1730) General Fu suffers a defeat at the hands of Tseh Ning. (1732) With some Roman Catholic priests having snuck out of Canton to "attend their flocks" all priests are deported from Canton to Macao. Tseh Ning failing in an attempt to obtain some Khalka territory, surprises and defeats a force under Ngoh who is absent but whose family is captured. Ngoh swears revenge and marches against him, defeating him and compelling flight. General Ma intercepts, soundly defeating Tseh Ning who escapes to Ili. (1734) Tseh Ning is again defeated by Ngoh so he asks peace from Shih Tsung who, going against the advice of some, accepts as long as the old boundary of the Altai Mountains is accepted as dividing the two domains. (1735) Rebellion in Kweichow. It is found that Ngoh's policy of not allowing them to be ruled by their own chiefs is the cause: He is demoted but the rebellion's suppression is hindered by dissension between gens Hoh and Chang-chau. While trying to work out this problem, Shih Tsung falls ill and dies one month later.

M6 Kao Tsung (fourth son, 25 years old). He recalls generals Hoh and Chang-chau to be punished and sends general Chang Kwang to Kweichow who puts down the rebellion in four months. (1740) General Chang Kwang is sent to put down a rebellion of the aboriginies of Hunan and Kwangsi. (1745) Death of Tseh Ning, who had been able to keep the restless hoards in order. Now, however, intertribal war erupts. His first son Taurcha becomes Khan but two grand-sons of Galdan, Davatsi and Amursana proclaim the khanship for the third son. The third, however, is killed; Davatsi and Amursana kill Taurcha and the khanship is given to the second son, Da-vatsi. (1746) Insurrection in Szchwan under chief Salo-pan. General Chang Kwang, due to treachery, is unable to succeed. Kao Tsung sends Nachin to find out why: he and Chang Kwang quarrel; Kao Tsung has both killed. General Fu is sent and he quells the rebellion. (1754) Amursana begins encroaching on Davatsi's power with the resultant conflict, Amur-sana flees to Kao Tsung. An army under Panti and Ying is sent against Davatsi with an allied Eleuth contingent under Amursana and Salai. Davatsi flees to Turkestan where the Mohammedans send him back to Peking as a captive. (1755) The Cohong prohibits trading with native junks or small merchants while ships await entrance to port. Amursana, vexed at the emperor's division of Ili into four great divisions, each with a chief (he desires to rule it all), kills Panti at Ili and is forced into hiding, twice escaping capture. Kao Tsung sends general Chan-hui after him; he pursues Amursana into Russia where the fugitive contracts small-pox and dies. (1756-60) With the Chinese now in control of Ili and Jungaria, Kao Tsung decides, for strategic reasons to conquer eastern Turkestan south of the Tien-shan range: Ruler of east Turkestan, Pulutun and his brother Hwotsichen refuse to submit and general Ma is sent against them but is defeated at Kashgar. He is executed and general Chan-hui, in charge of Ili is sent and is saved by the aid of reinforcements under Alikwan and Fuh-teh. Slowly, the Mohammedans are beaten; Kashgar and Yarkand are taken and soon Pulutun and Howotsichen flee to Bodakshan whose chief, fearing the Chinese, puts them to death; eastern Turkestan becomes a Chinese dependency. (1760) The East India Company petitions the viceroy of Canton to do away with the Cohong system. It is denied. (1761) Chan-

hui and Fuh-teh return to Peking and receive honors. (1764) A Tourgot tribe, having fled from Galdan into Russia, returns to Ili (restless under Russian tax-gatherers) amid much hardship at the hands of the Kirghis tribes. Kao Tsung treats them kindly, giving them a district and appointing a Khan. (1766-9) War with Burma: Caused by the reactions of ex-Burma tribes being brought to submission by the Burmese forces; one tribal head kills the governor-general of Yunnan. The Burmese enter Yunnan in pursuit. Kao Tsung sends Yang-ying against them but he is incompetent. Two divisions, one under general Ming, march; with much difficulty Ming manages to drive the Burmese back but is finally annihilated. Generals Alikwan and Akwei are now sent against the Burmese and after much inconclusive fighting, the latter suggests peace: Burma pays tribute, prisoners released and all captured territory returned. Kao Tsung agrees. (1770) Chinese troops return to China, destroying their war materiel. The Chinese, however, retain three districts they had captured so the Burmese retain their prisoners. (1771) The Cohong, because of many bankrupt members, is abolished. A committee of 12 merchants is set up as its replacement. (1771-5(?)) Kao Tsung orders general Akwei to harass the Burmese but falls into much difficulty and is transferred to put down the rebellion in Szchwan along the Great and Little Golden River districts. First he subdues the Little Golden River district, its chief flees to Solomuh, of the Great Golden River district. Akwei attacks him but is opposed by the resurgent rebels of the Little Golden River district; gen Wun-fuh is killed. Ak-wei reconquers his lost territory in five days and turns against Solomuh: He captures fort after fort until solomuh kills the other leader and asks for peace. Kao Tsung says no. Finally Akwei besieges Solomuh in his last fort, the rebel surrenders and is put to death. Akwei is made a duke. (1777) Wang-lun leads an insurrection in Shantung, it is put down. (1780) Pa-shen, younger brother of the Dali Lama, receives lavish gifts from Kao Tsung but dies in Peking of smallpox. His property is confiscated by his elder brother. Another younger brother invites a band of Gurkhas to help in forcing the elder brother to share the property; they do and return home with plunder. (1781) Mohammedans in Shensi raise an insurrection due to sectual differences in religious views. It is put down with much loss of life and property. (1786-7) Liu leads a rebellion on Formosa of the "riff-raff" which have formed a secret society. Generals Fuh Kwang-an and Hai Lan-ch'ai are sent with 12,000 men to suppress it; Liu is sent to Peking. (1788) Yuan, minister of Cochin-China leads a rebellion forcing the king to flee; he appeals to Sun, governor-general of Kwang-si whom Kao Tsung instructs to put the rebellion down. (June) Sun leads 20,000 men into Cochin China and reinstates the king. Yuan takes advantage of Sun's overconfidence and defeats him at the "Rich Dragon" river. Kao Tsung now sends Fun Kwang-an into Cochin-China but Yuan submits and is placed as king as it is determined the rightful king is incapable of holding his position. (1789) Yuan attends Kao Tsung's 80th birthday celebration at Jehol. Also this year, Burmese ambassadors appear and Kao Tsung reinstitutes trade relations with that country. (1790) A band of Gurkhas invade Tibet and general Pa-chung, fearing them, concludes a treaty promising them an annual subsidy. (1791) The Gurkhas appear demanding their payment, but Pa-chung has been replaced and his replacement refuses; he calls for help. Kao Tsung sends generals Fuh Kwang-an and Hai Lan-ch'ai with 30,000 men: They handily pursue the Gurkhas into the Himalayas. While battling among the steep mountain gorges, the Gurkhas become insistent on terms being themselves severely set upon by the British. Fuh agrees to stop all hostilities if all plunder is returned, Pa-chung's treaty deed returned and a tribute of elephants and horses paid over five years. The Gurkhas agree. (1795)(Autumn) Lord Macartney reaches the Peiho on an embassy to Kao Tsung who receives him in gratitude for the part the British played in the Gurkha war. (1795-6) The Miautze uprising on the borders of Kweichow and Hunan provs. General Fuh Kwang-an is sent against them without much success and dies before the campaign ends. (1796) By this time opium importation has risen tremendously, causing a great outflow of bullion and despite Chinese efforts to curb the increasing traffic (which only increases smuggling). This year an edict is issued forbidding its importation - Cantonese authorities begin secret importation under clandestine levies and official fees. Kao Tsung resigns his throne to his son.

W7 Jen Tsung. A mainly Buddhist secret society, the "White Lily", begins a rebellion in Hupeh that quickly spreads throughout the six richest provinces: The rebels are indiscriminate in who is killed, robbed or punished. Meanwhile, Jen Tsung about this time has duke Ho-kwan, trusted friend and conseller of Kao Tsung and his prime minister during last few years of his reign, tried for treason and imprisoned. (1802) English forces occupy Macao to prevent French occupation: Before Chinese forces can intercede, the treaty of Amiens restores Macao to Portugal. (1805) After much expense and a great many lives, the "White Lily" rebellion is put down. (1806) A pirate named Ch'ai begins maurading the coast; with the government unable to do anything, merchants band together, amass a fleet under the command of one Li who almost captures Ch'ai but is killed by a cannon ball. Ch'ai continues his plunder. (1808) An imperial fleet defeats Ch'ai near Amoy, the pirate drowns himself. Meanwhile, admiral Drury lands at Macao to prevent French occupation, the Chinese advance against him and not wishing to endanger trade, Drury sails away to India. A fort is built at the entrance to the river to Canton. (1813) Leading the secret society of "Heavenly Reason", Lin in Honan and Li-wun in Chihli raise a serious rebellion: Lin desires to establish a new ruling dynasty. (Oct 13) Lin enters the palace (not knowing the capture of Liu earlier) while Jen Tsung is away in Shensi. Through bungling, Lin and his men are captured. Jen Tsung returns from Shensi and orders their execution. (1816)(Aug 28) A British mission under Lord Amherst desires to affect a better method of carrying on Chinese-British trade is turned away by Jen Tsung due to a small delay in protocol.

W8 Hsuan Tsung. (2nd son). (1825) In protest over the incompetent and corrupt officials in Turkestan, the people

rally under one Jehangir, a descendant of the Khojans, to lead them to freedom. (Summer) Jehangir's growing force captures city after city. Hsuan Tsung appoints Chang-ling CIC and Yang Yu-chun division commander to quell Turkestan. After a very long offensive campaign, the rebellion is put down and Jehangir sent to Peking where he is killed. (1832) The Miautze natives arise in Canton, Kwangsi and Hunan provinces, against highhanded tactics of Chinese officials, led by members of the "Heaven and Earth" secret society and later after being defeated with much slaughter, led by one Golden Dragon. Governor Li of Canton manages to defeat them in Hunan province but is disgraced in his own. Commissioners Heng-an and Hu Sun-gi are sent to supercede Li and manage to talk the rebellion's end. (1833) One Hung Siu-tsuen fails his literary exam at Canton. He comes onto some Christian literature which he ignores but dreams of conquering evil. (Aug 28) Great Britain abolishes the East India's charter, opening Chinese trade to all British subjects; an officer is appointed to assure British subjects they are covered by British law and not Chinese. (1834) Lord Napier is sent as British superintendent of trade but is turned away from Canton. (Aug 18) Viceroy Lu of Canton orders English trading houses abandoned. (Sept 11) Even after the British ships *Imogen* and *Andromache* silence the forts guarding the harbor and trade still not resumed, Lord Napier retires to Macao. (Oct 11) Death of Lord Napier, succeeded by Mr. J.F. Davis, who advocates the conclusion of no craven policy with China but that a fleet should be sent to Peiho to directly pressure the emperor. The British government refuses to be so brash but the quality of traders and their conduct is deteriorating after the abolition of the East India Company. The English frigates leave. (1836)(Feb 5) With the opium trade now bigger than either China or England and so enmeshed with legitimate trade that its control is impossible, Sir G. Robinson, successor of Mr J.F. Davis, suggests that growing the opium poppy in British India be discontinued. (1837) (April 12) Chief Superintendent Captain Elliot, successor of Sir Robinson, is allowed to set up at Canton by recognizing Chinese superiority. (Nov 23) Lord Palmerson prohibits captain Elliot from effacing (and thus England) to the Chinese so he retires to Macao. (1838) By this year the opium trade has reached great proportions, much smuggling is going on and many armed conflicts are occurring. Peking is beset by two factions vying for either the legalization of opium or the abolition of it; both are concerned with the increasing size of the outflow of bullion to pay for opium. (1839) Peking decides to end the opium trade: Lin is appointed special imperial commissioner and high admiral to see to it. (March 18) Lin arrives Canton and begins severe measures against English traders. (May 4) All opium in Canton has been siezed by Lin. He continues his repression, however, and by the end of the month, the British leave Canton and go to Macao. Lin makes their stay there so unpleasant that (Aug 26) the British go to Hongkong. Now Lin negotiates with Elliot to restore legitimate trade at Canton but the British refuse Chinese terms of submission. Lin orders the British to leave Hongkong. (Nov 3) British men-o-war *Volage* and *Hyacinth* defeat a Chinese fleet sent against them; Lin offers rewards for Elliot's and other British heads. (1840)(June) A British fleet arrives Hongkong, in the support of Elliot, commanded by general Bremnewr. Canton is blockaded. (July) Ting-hai occupied and an armed force placed at the Peiho to force the hand of Hsuan Tsung. (Nov 6) With Ki-shen as imperial commissioner to settle the problem at Canton and Ele-poo the same at Chusan, a truce is concluded: England holds Chusan while the matter is settled. Unfortunately, Lin is appointed aid to Ki-shen. (1841)(Jan 6) Elliot gives Ki-shen an ultimatum for progress, none comes and the British sieze the forts of Chuen-pi and Tai-kok. (Jan 20) Treaty of Chuen-pi: Hongkong is ceded to the English, \$6,000,000 paid to Britain for the opium siezed by Lin, the Chinese and English are to be considered equals and Canton is to be opened for trade in Feb (Jan 26) British take possession of Hongkong and withdraw from Canton river and Chusan. Meanwhile, Hsuan Tsung disavows the treaty and orders Ki-shen to drive the British out. (Feb 18) Wang-tong fort opens fire on a British boat and war is declared. The British quickly capture several Chinese forts and approach Canton where (Mar 7) El-liot demands more of the same unless trade is carried out. The Chinese agree. The emperor's degredation of Ki-shen, however, informs the British that Hsuan Tsung hasn't changed his mind: They resume the capture of forts and destruction of junks. (Mar 30) Suspension of hostilities English men-o-war are to be allowed to anchor off foreign factories, Chinese shall cease arming, trade resumes at Canton. (April-May) The Chinese secretly cast cannon at Fatshan, rearm forts, bring in troops and ready fire-ships (May 21) Commissioner Yik-shan begins the attack but Elliot is ready for them, defeats all their advances and (May 27) is ready to storm Canton: Treaty of Canton: All non-Cantonese troops are to be withdrawn, \$6,000,000 ransom paid for Canton and trade is to resume at Canton and Whampoa. (Aug 10) Sir H. Pottinger, captain Elliot's successor arrives Macao and warns any evasion of the treaty's terms would be bad: The Chinese, disliking this language, rearm their forts. (Aug 21) An English expedition under Sir H. Gough and Sir W. Parker leaves Hongkong and captures Amoy, siezes Chusan and Ningpo port; Hsuan Tsung orders troops from all over the empire and Yih-king to retake Chusan. Meanwhile, Yik-shan in Canton is readying for the fight. 10 to 12,000 attack the British at Ningpo and Chin-hai but are repulsed. (1842)(April) Sir H. Gough takes Tsz-ki, (May 18) siezes Chapu port where he destroyes Chinese war material. (June-July) The British fleet captures Wu-sung and Shanghai and on (July 6) takes Chinkiang. (Aug 3) Fleet leaves Chinkiang and (Aug 9) arrives Nanking. (Aug 11) Nanking desires to negotiate. (Aug 29) TREATY OF NANKING signed aboard *HMS Cornwallis* by Sir H Pottinger and Ki-ying, Ili-pu and Niu-kien, ending the first war with China. PROVISIONS:

- (1) Lasting peace between England and China. (2) Opening of ports of Canton, Amoy, Fuchow, Ningpo and Sharphai to Englishmen for trade and citizens all to be under the jurisdiction of British consular officers. (3) Cession of Hongkong. (4) Opium indemnity of \$6,000,000. (5) Payment of debts due English merchants =

\$3,000,000. (6) Payment of war expenses = \$12,000,000. (7) 4,5 and 6 to be paid by Dec 1845. (8) China to release all prisoners of war. (9) Amnesty for all Chinese who aided the English. (10) A regular tariff established. (11) Official correspondence conducted on terms of equality. (12) Conditions for restoring English held places to be according to indemnity payments. (13) Time for exchanging ratifications of treaty.

(1843) Hung Siu-tsuen again fails to obtain his degree. Now he reads his 10yo Christian literature, is converted preaches and gains a convert Yun-shan: They move to the mts near Miautze, where Yun-shan preaches to the people. (Oct 8) Treaty of the Bogue signed, providing for the carrying on of trade at the new ports and etc. (Nov) Brit-ish consulates opened in Amoy and Shanghai and trade w/na-tives commences. (1844)(July 3) Trade treaty signed w/ USA. (Oct 23) Trade treaty signed w/France. Along w/this (thanks to the efforts of French commissioner Lagrene along w/Hwang and viceroy of Canton Ki-ying) Hsuan Tsung issues a decree of toleration of Christianity through-out the empire. (1845)(Dec) With China having met all her payments as stipulated in the Treaty of Nanking, English troops evacuate Chusan. Only the people of Can-ton remain stubbornly opposed to recognizing the Eng-lish as equals, and viceroy Ki-ying is unable to change their stance. (1845-6) The sons of Jehangir raise an insurrection in Turkestan, claiming their father's in-heritance and avenging his death, this is soon put down mainly for lack of Mohammedan support. On the S'n coast a large naval expedition clears out a rash of piracy that even attacked English ships. Also, secret societies consolidate, the chief being the Triad, awaiting a pro-pitious moment to rebel. Also in central China and along the Yellow river much civil unrest seethes due to floods and general decline of prosperity. (1847)(April 1) Sir J. Davis, Gov of Hongkong, after the Cantonese have attempt- ed to murder some Englishmen, sails against Canton. Cer tain English privileges are gained but the people are still adamant. (Dec) 6 English are murdered near Canton. (1848) ATT Hung Siu-tsuen finds that Yun-shan has gath-ered a great many followers who begin the destruction of temples in the name of ridding China of idolatry; local mandarins become alarmed: PRIME MINISTER Saishangah and one Tahungah are appointed imperial commissioners to put down the in-surrection. Also this year, the "Coolie Traffic" begins; volunteer laborers for Peru and Cuba are recruited from Chinese peasants. (1849) Hsuan Tsung refuses to force Canton authorities to admit the English into Canton.

W9 Wen Tsung(4th son, 19yo), Reign title; Hien (Hsien) Fung (Feng). His anti-foreign feelings are evidenced as he dismisses Ki-ying and appoints Su viceroy of Canton and the anti-foreign Yen Ming-chin as Gov-Gen of Canton. (18 50)(Summer) The Taiping rebellion (of Hung Siu-tsuen and Yun-shan) sieze and fortify Lien-chu in Kwang-si; then it is abandoned in favor of Taitsun. The Triad society lea-ders show an interest but then draw away from the Tai-ping's and join the imperialists. (1851-2) The Taipings capture Yangan, then failing against Kwei-ling, take Tou failing against Changsha, take Hanyang and Wuchang, Ngan-king and kiukiang. (1853) A party of Cantonese rebels sieze Shanghai, stopping the collection of foreign cus-toms. The Chinese official there places collection in the hands of the English, French and American ministers who set up Custom House rules. Mr T. Wade is commission er and is superceded [1854] by Mr Lay. The Taipings attack Nanking and (March 8) take the city. Hung Siu-tsuen pro-claims himself emperor and 5 of his leading chiefs are made princes. (May) A large Taiping force is dispatched to Peking. (Oct 28) The Taiping force having taken 26 cit-ies, encamps at Tsinghai, near Tientsin. (1854) The reb-els turn more and more to wandering about, conquering and occupying various areas. (1855)(Mar) The Taipings return to Ngan-hwui; the movement having degenerated into a horde of robbers, having no system of maintaining their conquests and plagued by growing divisions of theological differences. (1856) Taiping holdings have declined to only Nanking and Nganking, both blockaded by imperial for-ces. (Oct 8) The Arrow, a junk licensed by Hongkong to fly the British flag, is siezed at Canton on orders of Yeh Ming-chin. Mr Parkes remonstrates w/Yeh but Yeh re-fuses to apologize. (1857) With Yeh refusing to abide by the Treaty of Nanking, admiral Seymour sails up the Can-ton river w/mr Parkes, forces entry to Yeh's palace and de mands an interview. Admiral Seymour sends to England for reinforcements. (June 3) Reinforcements reach Singapore where they are joined by some French. Lord Elgin and Baron Gros approach Yeh. Meanwhile some English troops leave Singapore to go to India to help against the rebellion then return. (Dec) 5,000 English and 1,000 French troops advance on Canton, (27 Dec) reach its walls and blockade it. (29 Dec) Canton is taken, Yeh captured and sent to In-dia and the city placed under joint administration of Chi-na, England and France. (1858)(Jan) The blockade is lifted and Canton once again flourishes [it has been found that the government of Peking sanctioned and suggested Yeh's anti-foreign policy]. (Feb-April) Requests for audience w/the Peking government are turned down. Lord Elgin sails his fleet to Taku (May) arriving off the Peiho. Soon the Taku for-ts are taken; the Peking government now sends Kweiliang and Hwa shana to negotiate: (26-29 June) Treaty of Tientsin sig-ned by China and the English: Main articles of the 56 it contains: Foreign powers in China have right to have an ambassador at Peking. Legalization of opium w/duty £10 on each chest. (4 July) Treaty of Tientsin ratified by im-perial edict from Wen Tsung. Also, USA, France and Russia ATT have their treaties signed. Meanwhile, anti-foreign sentiment (abetted by gov-gen Hwang) grows stronger ar-ound Canton though the city itself has become an inter-national marketplace. (1859) It becomes apparent that the Peking government doesn't wish to ratify the Treaty of Tientsin. (24 June) Battle of Taku, Chinese forces man-age to repulse allied forces seeking treaty ratification (July) The American minister Mr Ward is assured safe con duit to Peking by Hang-fuh, gov-gen of Chihli- Ward sees commissioner Kwei-liang and is sent back to Peh-tang where (15 Aug) ratification is carried out. (1860)(6 May) A Taiping force sallies from Nanking and scatters the besie-gers; the Taipings once

more advance (July) capturing Kiangnan, Chehkiang and all but raze the beautiful city of Soochow. Later Ningpo is taken and the English manage to save Shanghai from Taiping ravages. Meanwhile, the English and French are determined to carry on their war to satisfactory results; Lord Elgin and Baron Gros are appointed plenipotentiaries; 13,000 English, 7,000 French and 2,500 Cantonese coolies (baggage handlers) set out. (1 Aug) The allied army assembles off Peh-tang. (12 Aug) It lands and advances on the Taku forts by land. (21 Aug) The Taku forts are taken after fierce fighting. The allies advance to Tientsin where Kwei-liang tries to delay them (8 Sept) The allies reach Tungchow. Mr Parkes and Mr Loch and others are taken prisoner by an ambush and sent to Pe-king. (18 Sept) Battle of Chang-kia-wan, Chinese forces under Sangkolinsin are defeated. (21 Sept) Battle of Palikiau (8-mile bridge), Sankolinsin is again defeated and his forces scattered. Wen Tsung flees to Jehol; Prince Kung, his bro, sends commissioners to negotiate but Lord Elgin states only if the prisoners are released: Kung refuses. The allies advance on Peking and (6 Oct) camp at the NW gate. Prince Kung releases the prisoners, many whom have died through cruel tortures that anger the allies. Lord Elgin therefore decides that £100,000 be paid as compensation to the families of the murdered men and that the Summer Palace be destroyed by fire. Prince Kung yields to the allies. (24 Oct) The Treaty of Tientsin is ratified and the Convention (8,000,000 taels paid for war expenses and cession of Kowlung) is signed to the English. (25 Oct) The same is signed for the French. (Nov) All allied forces leave except garrisons at Tientsin and Taku, to leave when the indemnity is paid. This year also ATT the Panthays, a Mohammedan tribe, taking advantage of the Taiping troubles, raise a rebellion, taking over W'n Yunnan. (1861)(17 Aug) Death of Wen Tsung at Jehol: He had beforehand placed all administrative powers in the hands of a council of 8, all conservative and anti-foreign They plot the death of Wen Tsung's 3 bros, the queen and the heir's mother - they appoint themselves regents.

W10 Mu Tsung(son, 6yo), Reign title; T'ung Chih. Prince Kung apprehends the 8 conspirators killing some and banishing others; he w/the 2 empress-dowagers form a Council of Regency, assisted by Wen-siang and Kwei-liang. Mr H.N. Lay, Shanghai Commissioner of Customs is authorized to provide material and training to Chinese forces to put down the Taiping rebellion. (1861-3) The American Ward is engaged to head imperial forces against the Taipings; Sung-kiang is recovered. This army, the "Ever Victorious Army" continues against the Taipings. (1863) 8 gunboats under capt Osborn RN arrives China and Prince Kung and Mr Lay cannot agree as to their disposition. Soon Mr Lay is dismissed and Sir Robert Hart is appointed Commissioner of Customs. (1864)(June) Having nearly exterminated the Taipings, the "Ever Victorious Army" is disbanded. (July) Imperial forces capture Nanking but a small Taiping band escapes and captures Changchow. (1865) Imperial forces re-cover Changchow ending the Taiping rebellion that has desolated 9 provs, ruined flourishing towns and cities and caused the deaths of 20,000,000. (1866) Yakub Beg rises against the son of Jehangir of W Kashgaria, takes possession of the country and extends control over neighboring tribes. He is styled "Champion Father", as redresser of the wrongs against Mohammedans by the Chinese. The Russians, desiring trade routes and fearing the fall of Ili, sieze Kuldja and region. (1867) The Panthays make Tali their capital under the rule of Tu Wun-siu (Sultan Sul-eiman). The Regents decide to join China w/the community of nations and begin appointing ambassadors to 11 W'n governments. The Hon A Burlingame, recent US minister in Peking, is appointed their head, setting out to "sell" China to the W [dies St Petersburg, Feb 1870]. (1868) Major Sladen is sent to Tali to see if their rebellion has paralyzed trade and if it can be revived. The Chinese merchants of Burma see danger to themselves if trade re-vives, prevent Sladen's mission from reaching Tali; it only goes as far as Momein. (1870)(21 June) Through administrative bungling of the French consul and Roman Catholic Church's Sisters of Mercy, a Chinese mob attacks and destroys the French consulate, the cathedral and the orphanage, all at Tientsin, killing 18 French and 2 Russians. An investigation has the officials of fault punished, compensation paid and Chung Haw, Superintendent of Trade, goes to Paris and apologizes for the affair to the government. This year also, the Dunganis rebel and joined by other tribes, take over E Turkestan, Ili, through Kanush and into Shensi, threatening China proper. (1871) 54 Loo-chooan (Japanese) sailors are murdered by savages on E coast of Formosa. The Japanese government asks the Chinese government for redress, but China has been unable to control the savages herself. (1872)(16 Oct) Mu Tsung is married to Aluteh, dau of a distinguished Manchu. (1873)(23 Feb) Mu Tsung attains his majority and assumes the reigns of government though the regents still actually rule. (29 June) Mu Tsung receives ministers from Japan, England, France, Russia, Germany and the USA as equals, though the audiences are not held in the palace. Later this year, Gen Tso Tsung-tang is sent to suppress the rebellion in Kanush and does when the main center of the rebellion, Suchau, is captured. Also this year, w/the coolie traffic having degenerated into a vast system of kidnapping, the system is done away with through the efforts of Harry Parkes, English consul. A new system is established wherein every coolie wishing to emigrate does so willingly and has his rights guaranteed. Meanwhile, forces under Gen Li besiege the Panthays at Tali, capture Tu Wun-siu, ending that rebellion. Trade begins to revive and an English agent resides at Bhamo. (1874) Receiving no redress from the event of 1871, Japanese forces under Gen Saigo, land Formosa. Sir T Wade intervenes and settles the dispute w/a Chinese payment of 1,000,000 taels to the Japanese. Another trade mission, under Col Browne, leaves Bhamo for Hankow to inspect possibilities beyond Momein. (1875) (17 Jan) Mr Margary arrives Bhamo to act as Col Brown's guide and interpreter. Border tribes, however, abetted by Chinese traders, begin being more hostile toward the English mission. (20 Feb) Mr Margary is murdered at Momein. Col Browne is able to make his way, w/the aid of his Sikh escort, past hostile Chinese to Bhamo. Meanwhile (12 Jan) death of Mu

Tsung of Smallpox; (12 Feb)

W11 Teh Tsung(4 yo), Reign title; Kwang (Kuang) Su (Hsu) ("Brilliant Succession"). Son of Prince Chung, younger bro of Prince Kung. By right, Tsai Ching, son of Prince Kung, should succeed, but if he did, Kung would have had to retire. Also, Mu Tsung's queen Aluteh was pregnant but died before giving birth. Later this year, orders from London appoint a commission of hon T Grosvenor, Messrs Davenport and Baber along w/ Li Han-chang to investigate the death of Mr Margary: It is fraught w/delays. (1876) This year Korea and Japan conclude a trade treaty. Avoiding war, the commission has terms agreed to at (13 Sept) Che Hoo: 200,000 taels paid for the murder; the emperor shall direct high officials to protect English-men; an embassy shall apologize to London: In addition, regulations on opium, transit passes and likin taxes are established: 4 new ports are opened for trade as well as 6 on the Yang-tze for the landings of goods. Meanwhile, gen Tso Tsung-tang is sent against the Dunganis and Moham-medan rebels. He drives the Dunganis out of China and est-ablishes headquarters at Barkul and Hami. (Dec) BTT gen Tso has ended the Dungan rebellion, reestab'd Chinese rule over former rebel terr. (1877) Tso now advances against Yakub Beg, whom he defeats in battle after battle, dri-ving him out of kansuh to Korla where (May) Yakub dies, ending the resistance. Tso quickly regains Karashgar, Korla, Kashgar, Yarkand and Khoten. (1878) Tso has recov-ered all of E'n Turkestan. Chunghow is sent to St. Peter sburg to negotiate the recovery of the terr they occu-pied in 1866. This year too, after several years of dra-ught, a terrible famine ravages Shansi and Shensi, killing more than 8,000,000. All classes aid the destitute, even aid comes from England. (1880)(Jan) Chungchow returns from St Petersburg, having negotiated a treaty wherein Russia retains Ili, the strong passes in the Tien Shan mts, Yarkand and receive 5,000,000 rubles. The government repu-diates his treaty and condemns him to be executed though foreign ambassadors at Peking arrange his release. Now Marquis Teng is sent to Russia. (1881) Death of the Em-press-Dowager. The Chinese government grants Korea permission to contract treaties of trade and etc w/foreign powers be-cause the government is uneasy over Russian intentions regard-ing Korea: Such treaties, it is hoped, will deter Russ-ian aggression in that area. (Aug) Marquis Teng returns from St Petersburg w/a treaty: All Ili except the extre-me W'n strip, is returned to China and 9,000,000 rubles are paid to Russia as indemnity for all Russian claims. The government ratifies it. (1882) USA enters into trade ag-reements w/Korea. The French in Cochin China move to in-vade Tonkin - N'n Annam - to secure the best trade route - the Red River - to S'n China. Hanoi is captured. Only the Black Flags offer resistance: The French capture Son tay but are defeated at Hanoi - they send for reinforce-ments. (1883) French under admiral Courbet attack Sontay (recaptured by Black Flags) and after a furious battle re-take the town. This year too, England enters trade rela-tions with Korea. (1884) A passport is issued to one C. Macaulay for the purpose of seeking out trade between India and Tibet, but his mission comes to naught. (March) Gen Millot; who succeeded Adm Courbet, captures Bacninh, forcing the Black Flags to retreat. The Chinese government now intervenes. (11 May) A treaty is signed giving Lang-son and other places to the French. The Black Flags pro-test and disperse the French force on the way to Langson. The French demand an apology and 10,000,000 sterling from China; former yes, latter no. This year too, a riot oc-curs in Seol and the king applies to Japan for aid. But Chinese troops advance, defeat the Japanese and treat them w/contempt, insensing the Japanese nation. (1884-5) Adm Courbet leads French forces against the Chinese 1st und-er the aging Tso Tsung-tang (who soon dies at Foochow). The French are soon defeated. (1885) An outbreak in Seol largely concerning the Japanese brings Japan and China (May) to conclude an agreement that neither will send troops to Korea w/o 1st informing the other. (9 June) French-Chinese treaty - about same as one of 11 May, 18-84. (1889) Teh Tsung is married to a Manchu princess - it is a lavish event. (1890)(17 Mar) Treaty of Calcutta: Trade is OK'd between India and Tibet: Trade, communica-tions and pasturage are allowed; the Sikkim-Tibet border is defined; China reconquers English protectorate over Sikkim; Ya-tung is to be the trading city; the Inspector General at Peking will appt commissioners of Customs there w/the sanction of the Tsung-li Tamen (Board of Foreign Affairs) and an agent of the Indian government. (1891) Teh Tsung receives the foreign ambassadors in public and in the "Hall of Tributary Nations" which rankles their respective nations. (1894)(1 May) A new trading station is opened inside the Tibetan frontier, to which Indian authorities are permitted to send an officer: All arti-cles except munitions and narcotics are to pass duty free for 5 yrs after which duties shall be imposed. Tibetans are allowed to cross over into Sikkim to pasture their flocks. (Spring) A local rebellion breaks out in Korea against the government caused by corrupt officials fleeing the populace, particularly in Chulla and Chung-chong provs. The rebels, led by the Tong-hak (National Party) advance on Seol. The Korean king applies to China for military aid. (4 June) China notifies Japan of her purpose and 1,500 men land 100 miles from Chemulpo; the reb-ellion folds and all Chinses troops return to China except 500 that remain in Seol to guard the government against fur-ther problems. (June) Japan notifies China that her mes sage of 4 June was not prompt enough to satisfy the ag-reement of May 1885; Japan sends 5,000 men under gener-al Oshima to Chemulpo, sending 1,500 of these to Seol (all w/provisions for 3 mos) to protect Japanese citizens in Korea. Japan's action has a 4-fold basis: The treatment they received in 1884; the murder this year of Kim Ok-kuin, a Korean statesman, in Shanghai after re-siding in Japan since 1884 for w/the Chinese did nothing the Japanese have done more for bringing Korea into the world than has China; an outlet must be found for the military, becoming restless over rapid Japanese consti-tutionalism. (25 July) Japanese ship Naniwa sinks the English steamer Kow-shing chartered to carry 1,100 tr-oops to Korea. (29 July) Battle of Yashan; Japanese for ces defeat the Chinese. (1 Aug) War is declared (the Chinese call the Japanese "The Dwarfs"). (10 Aug) Chin-ese troops murder

Rev Mr Wylie in Liau-yang. The government issues a proclamation; the people are commanded to re-frain from violence against foreigners. At this time the emperor for the 1st time allows to see foreign ambassadors w/in the palace. Soon, the murderers of Mr Wylie are punished. (15 Sept) Battle of Ping-yang; Chinese are thoroughly defeated by the Japanese. (24 Oct) 30,000 Japanese under count Oyama land at Kinchow and advance against China, hastening from Ping-yang to the Yalu, cross the river and (25 Oct) sieze Chiu-lien-cheng. The Japanese advance easily as Chinese troops flee; the people welcome their honorable manners as opposed to Chinese troops' rapine and plunder. (7 Nov) 60th birthday of the Empress-Dowager; as a gift some Christian (Protestant) Women present her w/a bible; Teh Tsung takes an interest in the book. (21-2 Nov) Japanese forces capture Port Arthur, to the astonishment of the Chinese - felt to be impregnable - but possibly due to Chinese treachery. Meanwhile, Battle of Mo-tien-ling; the Japanese defeat the Chinese and return to An-tung. (27 Nov) Chinese government sends Mr Detring to Japan to find out if Japan is willing to come to terms or not; he is not seen by the Japanese who turn him away. (17 Dec) Battle of the Yalu; the Japanese fleet manages to defeat a Chinese fleet off the mouth of the river, due to speedier ships though the Chinese had more torpedos. (1895)(8 Jan) Japanese forces capture Hai-cheng and (9 Jan) Kai-ping, gaining the whole Liau-tung peninsula. Now Japanese forces head for Wei-hai-wei; (23 Jan) 25,000 men land at Yung-ching bay and another force (26 Jan) occupies Ning-hai. This day, 2 envoys - Chang Yuhuan and Shau Yu-lien - are sent to Japan to open negotiations, but their credentials are found to be defective and are bowed out of Japan. (Feb) Battle of Wei-hai-wei. Admiral Ting, unable to hold this great fortress in the face of fleeing men, (12 Feb) surrenders and commits suicide; Japan gains possession of China's whole N'n fleet. (Feb-Mar) Japanese forces successfully battle their way toward Newchang. Battle of Newchang; Japanese forces defeat 2 large Chinese armies; 40,000 under gen Sung and 30,000 under gen Wu, mainly due to animosity and jealousy between Sung and Wu who wouldn't work together. Japanese forces now take possession of Yin-kow. This last makes the final campaign in a war where the Japanese didn't lose a single battle; China has thus become no-longer a military power of any importance, due mainly to 4 reasons: (1) Rottenness and corruption of local officials; money takes precedence over country, honor, etc. (2) Absence of patriotism except concerning one's immediate locale. (3) The existence of an impassible gulf between mandarins and people. (4) Inadequacy of a military establishment geared for fighting Asian barbarians and not nations that have adopted Western industrial materials and tactics. (15 Mar) Li Hung-chang is dispatched to Japan to conclude a treaty of peace. Negotiations begin but Li is shot in the face; while he is recuperating, Japan extends an armistice for 20 days, then to 8 May. Meanwhile Japanese conquest of Formosa continues, (24 Mar) the Pescadores are captured. (8 May) Japanese-Chinese treaty; ratified at Chefoo: (1) Korea is independent. (2) Liau-tung peninsula, Formosa and the Pescadores are ceded to Japan. (3) China pays an indemnity of 200,000 taels in 7 years. (4) Opening of the following cities; Ching-chow and Sha-shih in Hupeh; Chungking in Szechwan; Soochow in Kiangsu and Hangchow in Chehkiang. The army on Formosa protests the cession of the island to Japan; it asks the emperor to not consent to it, but to no avail. The island is offered to the English consul at Tamsuy but it is not accepted. So the army determines to resist the Japanese. (25 May) Formosa is declared an independent republic with Tang (the late governor) 1st president (accepts only to save his life). (3 June) A Japanese force of 4,000 men lands and attacks Kelung and in 3 hours captures Palm Island fort and East fort, driving before them the Formosan 12,000 man army. (5 June) Bribing his bodyguard president Tang escapes to a steamer in Tamsuy harbor. When this is discovered, pandemonium breaks out as looting, pillaging, rape and murder become widespread. Black Flag gen Liu Yung-fu declares himself president but his forces are unable to stop the southern progress of Japanese forces. (Oct-end) Japanese forces manage to gain control of all Formosa: Liu Yung-fu flees to the mainland and his forces surrender w/o a fight. (7 Nov) Treaty of Peking; settling a dispute wherein Russia, Germany and France protested Japan's occupation of Liau-tung peninsula; Japan waives her right to it and accepts 30,000,000 taels instead.

(1898)(Spring) Confirmation of cession of Kiao-chau Bay to Germany. Britain agrees to a 4% loan of £12,000,000 to pay indemnity to Japan: China agrees to open all inland waters to foreign navigation and maintain an English man at Head of Customs. Russia demands Port Arthur and Talienwan and threatens occupation of Manchuria if unsatisfied. China agrees. Deer Island is ceded to Russia. Wei-hai-wei port is ceded to Great Britain for 99 years. A month later, 200 square miles of mainland opposite Hongkong are ceded to Great Britain.

(1899)(April-May) US minister Major Conger protests extension of French concession at Shanghai; an international agreement is urged for enforcement of all foreign settlements. A tacit agreement is reached by Great Britain and US to maintain "Open Door" policy. A new treaty port at Nanuning-fu is opened. Later, under Italian demands, Sammun Bay is also opened. (June-July) Riots in Hongkong are put down. (Oct) Italy abandons Sammun Bay. The emperor refuses to remove obstructions in Yang-tsekiang river to navigation by foreigners. Anti-foreign sentiments are growing; powerful secret societies are forming to resist foreigners. (1900)(7 May) "Miracle of Miao-Fend-Shan": Birth of Boxer ("Fist of Righteous Harmony") movement; it is anti foreigner. (May-June) Murdering of Christian congregations and leaders begins. Christian refugees flee into Peking. (June) British and Russian warships gather off Taku. Sugiyama of the Japanese Legation is murdered. (9 June) Troops land to repair railroad to Tientsin. (10 June) Force of 2,000 under British adm Sir John Seymour leaves Tientsin for Peking. Soon held up. (13

June) Boxers enter Peking by Ha-taen Gate, firing and de-destroying many foreign backed banks and etc. (17 June) For eign warships (except US) demand surrender of Taku forts at mouth of Pei-ho river. Chinese refuse. Forts are fired upon and Chinese cmdr leaves. (20 June) Murder of German minister Baron von Ketteler. The world takes notice of China's situation. (21 June) Prince Tuan orders all vi-ceroys to exterminate all foreigners. Bombardment of foreign legations begins. Meanwhile Boxers and soldiers attack Tien-tsin. (22 June-July) Defense of Tien-tsin falters. Peking bombardment increases. The great college of Hanlin burns, destroying a large library including loss of the "Yung Lo Ta Tien" and the "Ku Chin Tu Shun", and unprinted encyclopedic collection of classic litera-ture in 22,000 volumes. (5 Aug) Allied force (Japanese, Russian, British, US and French) attempt to retrieve le-gations at Peking. Battle of Peitsang; Tung-chow taken. (13-5 Aug) Fall of Peking. Empress-Dowager and young em-peror flee to Ta-tung-fu; viceroy Li Hung Chang appoin-ted peace commissioner to treat w/the allies. Germany calls for punishment. France and Italy demand exorbitant indemnnities. Great Britain and US hold fast for "Open Door". Russia takes Manchuria. (Sept-Nov) German expe-ditions bring Chinese court to terms. A decree issued degrades 4 Imperial princes implicated in the Boxer movement. Eventual settlement - the "Twelve Points": (1) Prince of China to Berlin to apologize for murder of Baron von Ketteler. (2) Punishment of guilty leaders and suspension of civil service exams in cities where mas-sacres occurred. (3) Reparations to Japan. (4) Expiatory monuments in desecrated foreign cemeteries. (5) Inter-diction of importation of arms into China. (6) Money in-demnnities to governments agreived. (7) Permanent guards at the legations. (8) Destruction of forts between Peking and the sea. (9) Military occupation of points to be designated. (10) Posting for 2 years of punishments for those guilty (11) Revision of commercial treaties. Etc. (Boxer Proto-col, 1901: See Langer).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Main Source

A History of China, Rev. J. MacGowan; Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner and Co., Ltd; Paternoster House, Charingcross Rd., London; 1857

Maps

An Historical Atlas of China; Albert Herrmann; Aldine Publishing Co., Chicago; 1966

Other Sources

The Civilization of China; Dun J.Li, translator; Charles Scribner's Sons, New York; 1975

The Chinese, Their History and Culture; Kenneth Scott Latourette; The MacMillan Co., New York; 1960

The Birth of China; Herrlee Glessner Creel; Frederick Ungar Publishing Co., New York; 1961

Ancient China's Technology and Science; Institute of History of Natural Sciences; Chinese Academy of Science; Foreign Language Press; Beijing, 1983.